

# NetBackup™ Deployment Guide for Kubernetes Clusters

Release 10.3



# NetBackup™ Deployment Guide for Kubernetes Clusters

## Legal Notice

Copyright © 2023 Veritas Technologies LLC. All rights reserved.

Veritas and the Veritas Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Veritas Technologies LLC or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This product may contain third-party software for which Veritas is required to provide attribution to the third party ("Third-party Programs"). Some of the Third-party Programs are available under open source or free software licenses. The License Agreement accompanying the Software does not alter any rights or obligations you may have under those open source or free software licenses. Refer to the Third-party Legal Notices document accompanying this Veritas product or available at:

<https://www.veritas.com/about/legal/license-agreements>

The product described in this document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation/reverse engineering. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Veritas Technologies LLC and its licensors, if any.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. VERITAS TECHNOLOGIES LLC SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.

The Licensed Software and Documentation are deemed to be commercial computer software as defined in FAR 12.212 and subject to restricted rights as defined in FAR Section 52.227-19 "Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights" and DFARS 227.7202, et seq. "Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as applicable, and any successor regulations, whether delivered by Veritas as on premises or hosted services. Any use, modification, reproduction release, performance, display or disclosure of the Licensed Software and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be solely in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

Veritas Technologies LLC  
2625 Augustine Drive.  
Santa Clara, CA 95054  
<http://www.veritas.com>

# Technical Support

Technical Support maintains support centers globally. Technical Support's primary role is to respond to specific queries about product features and functionality. The Technical Support group also creates content for our online Knowledge Base. The Technical Support group works collaboratively with the other functional areas within the company to answer your questions in a timely fashion.

Our support offerings include the following:

- A range of support options that give you the flexibility to select the right amount of service for any size organization
- Telephone and/or Web-based support that provides rapid response and up-to-the-minute information
- Upgrade assurance that delivers software upgrades
- Global support purchased on a regional business hours or 24 hours a day, 7 days a week basis
- Premium service offerings that include Account Management Services

For information about our support offerings, you can visit our website at the following URL:

[www.veritas.com/support](http://www.veritas.com/support)

All support services will be delivered in accordance with your support agreement and the then-current enterprise technical support policy.

## Contacting Technical Support

Customers with a current support agreement may access Technical Support information at the following URL:

[www.veritas.com/support](http://www.veritas.com/support)

Before contacting Technical Support, make sure you have satisfied the system requirements that are listed in your product documentation. Also, you should be at the computer on which the problem occurred, in case it is necessary to replicate the problem.

When you contact Technical Support, please have the following information available:

- Product release level
- Hardware information
- Available memory, disk space, and NIC information

- Operating system
- Version and patch level
- Network topology
- Router, gateway, and IP address information
- Problem description:
  - Error messages and log files
  - Troubleshooting that was performed before contacting Technical Support
  - Recent software configuration changes and network changes

## Licensing and registration

If your product requires registration or a license key, access our technical support Web page at the following URL:

[www.veritas.com/support](http://www.veritas.com/support)

## Customer service

Customer service information is available at the following URL:

[www.veritas.com/support](http://www.veritas.com/support)

Customer Service is available to assist with non-technical questions, such as the following types of issues:

- Questions regarding product licensing or serialization
- Product registration updates, such as address or name changes
- General product information (features, language availability, local dealers)
- Latest information about product updates and upgrades
- Information about upgrade assurance and support contracts
- Advice about technical support options
- Nontechnical presales questions
- Issues that are related to CD-ROMs, DVDs, or manuals

## Support agreement resources

If you want to contact us regarding an existing support agreement, please contact the support agreement administration team for your region as follows:

Worldwide (except Japan)

[CustomerCare@veritas.com](mailto:CustomerCare@veritas.com)

Japan

[CustomerCare\\_Japan@veritas.com](mailto:CustomerCare_Japan@veritas.com)

# Contents

|                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Technical Support .....                                                 | 4  |
| Chapter 1      Introduction .....                                       | 14 |
| About NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes clusters .....                 | 14 |
| Required terminology .....                                              | 15 |
| User roles and permissions .....                                        | 16 |
| About MSDP Scaleout .....                                               | 21 |
| MSDP Scaleout components .....                                          | 22 |
| Limitations in MSDP Scaleout .....                                      | 22 |
| About NetBackup Snapshot Manager .....                                  | 23 |
| Section 1      Deployment .....                                         | 24 |
| Chapter 2      Prerequisites for Kubernetes cluster configuration ..... | 25 |
| Config-Checker utility .....                                            | 25 |
| How does the Config-Checker utility work .....                          | 25 |
| Config-Checker execution and status details .....                       | 27 |
| Data-Migration for AKS .....                                            | 28 |
| How Data-Migration works .....                                          | 28 |
| Data-Migration execution and status details .....                       | 29 |
| Webhooks validation for EKS .....                                       | 30 |
| How does the webhook validation works .....                             | 30 |
| Webhooks validation execution details .....                             | 31 |
| Chapter 3      Deployment with environment operators .....              | 32 |
| About deployment with the environment operator .....                    | 32 |
| Prerequisites .....                                                     | 32 |
| Contents of the TAR file .....                                          | 34 |
| Known limitations .....                                                 | 35 |
| Manual deployment .....                                                 | 35 |
| Deploying the operators .....                                           | 35 |
| Deploying NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout .....                             | 41 |
| Deploying NetBackup and Snapshot Manager .....                          | 47 |

|                  |                                                                                  |            |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                  | Configuring the <code>environment.yaml</code> file .....                         | 56         |
|                  | Uninstalling NetBackup environment and the operators .....                       | 69         |
|                  | Applying security patches .....                                                  | 71         |
| <b>Chapter 4</b> | <b>Deploying NetBackup .....</b>                                                 | <b>76</b>  |
|                  | Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster ..... | 76         |
|                  | Recommendations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster .....              | 88         |
|                  | Limitations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster .....                  | 89         |
|                  | Primary and media server CR .....                                                | 90         |
|                  | About primary server CR and media server CR .....                                | 91         |
|                  | Elastic media server .....                                                       | 93         |
|                  | Monitoring the status of the CRs .....                                           | 96         |
|                  | Updating the CRs .....                                                           | 99         |
|                  | Deleting the CRs .....                                                           | 100        |
|                  | Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment .....                | 101        |
|                  | Managing NetBackup deployment using VxUpdate .....                               | 105        |
|                  | Migrating the cloud node for primary or media servers .....                      | 105        |
| <b>Chapter 5</b> | <b>Deploying NetBackup using Helm charts .....</b>                               | <b>107</b> |
|                  | Overview .....                                                                   | 107        |
|                  | Installing NetBackup using Helm charts .....                                     | 108        |
|                  | Uninstalling NetBackup using Helm charts .....                                   | 109        |
| <b>Chapter 6</b> | <b>Deploying MSDP Scaleout .....</b>                                             | <b>110</b> |
|                  | Deploying MSDP Scaleout .....                                                    | 110        |
|                  | Prerequisites for AKS .....                                                      | 111        |
|                  | Prerequisites for EKS .....                                                      | 113        |
|                  | Installing the docker images and binaries .....                                  | 115        |
|                  | Initializing the MSDP operator .....                                             | 116        |
|                  | Configuring MSDP Scaleout .....                                                  | 118        |
|                  | Using MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup .....                  | 119        |
|                  | Configuring the MSDP cloud in MSDP Scaleout .....                                | 120        |
|                  | Using S3 service in MSDP Scaleout for AKS .....                                  | 120        |
|                  | Enabling MSDP S3 service after MSDP Scaleout is deployed for AKS .....           | 121        |
| <b>Chapter 7</b> | <b>Deploying Snapshot Manager .....</b>                                          | <b>125</b> |
|                  | Prerequisites .....                                                              | 125        |
|                  | Installing the docker images .....                                               | 128        |



|            |                                                                      |     |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chapter 8  | Verifying Cloud Scale deployment .....                               | 132 |
|            | Verifying Cloud Scale deployment .....                               | 132 |
| Section 2  | Monitoring and Management .....                                      | 134 |
| Chapter 9  | Monitoring NetBackup .....                                           | 135 |
|            | Monitoring the application health .....                              | 135 |
|            | Telemetry reporting .....                                            | 137 |
|            | About NetBackup operator logs .....                                  | 138 |
|            | Expanding storage volumes .....                                      | 139 |
|            | Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods .....                | 141 |
|            | (AKS-specific) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods ..... | 141 |
|            | (EKS-specific) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods ..... | 145 |
| Chapter 10 | Monitoring MSDP Scaleout .....                                       | 150 |
|            | About MSDP Scaleout status and events .....                          | 150 |
|            | Monitoring with Amazon CloudWatch .....                              | 153 |
|            | Monitoring with Azure Container insights .....                       | 158 |
|            | The Kubernetes resources for MSDP Scaleout and MSDP operator .....   | 161 |
| Chapter 11 | Monitoring Snapshot Manager .....                                    | 163 |
|            | Overview .....                                                       | 163 |
|            | Logs of Snapshot Manager .....                                       | 163 |
|            | Configuration parameters .....                                       | 164 |
| Chapter 12 | Managing the Load Balancer service .....                             | 165 |
|            | About the Load Balancer service .....                                | 165 |
|            | Notes for Load Balancer service .....                                | 169 |
|            | Opening the ports from the Load Balancer service .....               | 170 |
| Chapter 13 | Managing MSDP Scaleout .....                                         | 172 |
|            | Adding MSDP engines .....                                            | 172 |
|            | Adding data volumes .....                                            | 173 |
|            | Expanding existing data or catalog volumes .....                     | 174 |
|            | Recommendation for media server volume expansion .....               | 174 |
|            | Manual storage expansion .....                                       | 175 |

|                   |                                                                        |            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                   | MSDP Scaleout scaling recommendations .....                            | 175        |
|                   | MSDP Cloud backup and disaster recovery .....                          | 176        |
|                   | About the reserved storage space .....                                 | 177        |
|                   | Cloud LSU disaster recovery .....                                      | 178        |
|                   | MSDP multi-domain support .....                                        | 182        |
|                   | Configuring Auto Image Replication .....                               | 183        |
|                   | About MSDP Scaleout logging and troubleshooting .....                  | 184        |
|                   | Collecting the logs and the inspection information .....               | 184        |
| <b>Chapter 14</b> | <b>Managing PostgreSQL DBaaS .....</b>                                 | <b>186</b> |
|                   | Changing database server password in DBaaS .....                       | 186        |
|                   | Updating database certificate in DBaaS .....                           | 190        |
|                   | Disabling non-SSL access to remote DBaaS on Azure .....                | 193        |
| <b>Chapter 15</b> | <b>Performing catalog backup and recovery .....</b>                    | <b>196</b> |
|                   | Backing up a catalog .....                                             | 196        |
|                   | Restoring a catalog .....                                              | 198        |
|                   | Primary server corrupted .....                                         | 199        |
|                   | MSDP-X corrupted .....                                                 | 203        |
|                   | MSDP-X and Primary server corrupted .....                              | 203        |
| <b>Chapter 16</b> | <b>Setting key parameters in Cloud Scale<br/>    deployments .....</b> | <b>207</b> |
|                   | Tuning touch files .....                                               | 207        |
|                   | Setting maximum jobs .....                                             | 209        |
|                   | Enabling intelligent catalog archiving .....                           | 209        |
|                   | Enabling security settings .....                                       | 209        |
|                   | Configuring email server .....                                         | 210        |
|                   | Reducing catalog storage management .....                              | 211        |
|                   | Configuring zone redundancy .....                                      | 212        |
|                   | Enabling client-side deduplication capabilities .....                  | 213        |
| <b>Section 3</b>  | <b>Maintenance .....</b>                                               | <b>215</b> |
| <b>Chapter 17</b> | <b>MSDP Scaleout Maintenance .....</b>                                 | <b>216</b> |
|                   | Pausing the MSDP Scaleout operator for maintenance .....               | 216        |
|                   | Logging in to the pods .....                                           | 216        |
|                   | Reinstalling MSDP Scaleout operator .....                              | 217        |
|                   | Migrating the MSDP Scaleout to another node pool .....                 | 217        |

|                   |                                                                                                                      |            |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Chapter 18</b> | <b>PostgreSQL DBaaS Maintenance .....</b>                                                                            | <b>219</b> |
|                   | Configuring maintenance window for PostgreSQL database in AWS .....                                                  | 219        |
|                   | Setting up alarms for PostgreSQL DBaaS instance .....                                                                | 220        |
| <b>Chapter 19</b> | <b>Upgrading .....</b>                                                                                               | <b>223</b> |
|                   | Upgrading NetBackup .....                                                                                            | 223        |
|                   | Preparing for NetBackup upgrade .....                                                                                | 223        |
|                   | Upgrading NetBackup operator .....                                                                                   | 225        |
|                   | Upgrading NetBackup application .....                                                                                | 225        |
|                   | Upgrade NetBackup from previous versions .....                                                                       | 227        |
|                   | Upgrading NetBackup using Helm charts .....                                                                          | 230        |
|                   | Procedure to rollback when upgrade of NetBackup fails .....                                                          | 234        |
|                   | Upgrading MSDP Scaleout .....                                                                                        | 234        |
|                   | Upgrading Snapshot Manager .....                                                                                     | 235        |
|                   | Upgrading Snapshot Manager operator .....                                                                            | 235        |
|                   | Upgrading Snapshot Manager .....                                                                                     | 236        |
|                   | Post-migration tasks .....                                                                                           | 238        |
| <b>Chapter 20</b> | <b>Uninstalling .....</b>                                                                                            | <b>240</b> |
|                   | Uninstalling MSDP Scalout from Kubernetes cluster .....                                                              | 240        |
|                   | Cleaning up MSDP Scaleout .....                                                                                      | 240        |
|                   | Cleaning up the MSDP Scaleout operator .....                                                                         | 241        |
|                   | Uninstalling Snapshot Manager from Kubernetes cluster .....                                                          | 242        |
| <b>Chapter 21</b> | <b>Troubleshooting .....</b>                                                                                         | <b>244</b> |
|                   | Troubleshooting AKS and EKS issues .....                                                                             | 244        |
|                   | View the list of operator resources .....                                                                            | 244        |
|                   | View the list of product resources .....                                                                             | 245        |
|                   | View operator logs .....                                                                                             | 248        |
|                   | View primary logs .....                                                                                              | 248        |
|                   | Socket connection failure .....                                                                                      | 248        |
|                   | Resolving an issue where external IP address is not assigned to<br>a NetBackup server's load balancer services ..... | 249        |
|                   | Resolving the issue where the NetBackup server pod is not<br>scheduled for long time .....                           | 250        |
|                   | Resolving an issue where the Storage class does not exist .....                                                      | 250        |
|                   | Resolving an issue where the primary server or media server<br>deployment does not proceed .....                     | 251        |
|                   | Resolving an issue of failed probes .....                                                                            | 252        |
|                   | Resolving token issues .....                                                                                         | 253        |

|                                                                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Resolving an issue related to insufficient storage .....                                                 | 254 |
| Resolving an issue related to invalid nodepool .....                                                     | 254 |
| Resolving a token expiry issue .....                                                                     | 255 |
| Resolve an issue related to KMS database .....                                                           | 255 |
| Resolve an issue related to pulling an image from the container registry .....                           | 256 |
| Resolving an issue related to recovery of data .....                                                     | 256 |
| Check primary server status .....                                                                        | 257 |
| Pod status field shows as pending .....                                                                  | 258 |
| Ensure that the container is running the patched image .....                                             | 259 |
| Getting EEB information from an image, a running container, or persistent data .....                     | 265 |
| Resolving the certificate error issue in NetBackup operator pod logs .....                               | 267 |
| Pod restart failure due to liveness probe time-out .....                                                 | 268 |
| NetBackup messaging queue broker take more time to start .....                                           | 268 |
| Host mapping conflict in NetBackup .....                                                                 | 269 |
| Issue with capacity licensing reporting which takes longer time .....                                    | 269 |
| Local connection is getting treated as insecure connection .....                                         | 269 |
| Primary pod is in pending state for a long duration .....                                                | 270 |
| Backing up data from Primary server's /mnt/nbdata/ directory fails with primary server as a client ..... | 270 |
| Storage server not supporting Instant Access capability on Web UI after upgrading NetBackup .....        | 271 |
| Taint, Toleration, and Node affinity related issues in cpServer .....                                    | 271 |
| Operations performed on cpServer in environment.yaml file are not reflected .....                        | 273 |
| Elastic media server related issues .....                                                                | 274 |
| Failed to register Snapshot Manager with NetBackup .....                                                 | 276 |
| Pods unable to connect to flexsnap-rabbitmq post Kubernetes cluster restart .....                        | 278 |
| Troubleshooting AKS-specific issues .....                                                                | 278 |
| Data migration unsuccessful even after changing the storage class through the storage yaml file .....    | 278 |
| Host validation failed on the target host .....                                                          | 279 |
| Primary pod goes in non-ready state .....                                                                | 279 |
| Troubleshooting EKS-specific issues .....                                                                | 280 |
| Resolving the primary server connection issue .....                                                      | 280 |
| NetBackup Snapshot Manager deployment on EKS fails .....                                                 | 281 |
| Wrong EFS ID is provided in environment.yaml file .....                                                  | 281 |
| Primary pod is in ContainerCreating state .....                                                          | 282 |

|            |                                                  |     |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
|            | Webhook displays an error for PV not found ..... | 283 |
| Appendix A | CR template .....                                | 284 |
|            | Secret .....                                     | 284 |
|            | MSDP Scaleout CR .....                           | 285 |
|            | MSDP Scaleout CR template for AKS .....          | 286 |
|            | MSDP Scaleout CR template for EKS .....          | 293 |

# Introduction

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes clusters](#)
- [Required terminology](#)
- [User roles and permissions](#)
- [About MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [About NetBackup Snapshot Manager](#)

## About NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes clusters

NetBackup provides the product deployment solution on the following Kubernetes clusters:

- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes (EKS) cluster, in the Amazon Web Services (AWS) Cloud
- Azure Kubernetes Services cluster (AKS), in the Azure Cloud

The solution facilitates an orchestrated deployment of the NetBackup components on Kubernetes clusters.

You can deploy NetBackup on the above Kubernetes clusters for scaling the capacity of the NetBackup host to serve a large number of requests concurrently running on the NetBackup primary server at its peak performance capacity.

This guide provides you two distinct methods of deployment. The first and the recommended one is by using the environment operators. In this method, you can deploy the entire NetBackup environment with ease. You can deploy, one primary, and optionally, one media with one or more replicas, one MSDP Scaleout with four

to 16 replicas and NetBackup Snapshot Manager with autoscaling capabilities for data movement. The guide describes a very comprehensive method to deploy, configure, and remove the NetBackup components using the environment operators.

You can also go for a discrete deployment of the NetBackup components without using the environment operator. This method is not the recommended method of deployment.

### Supported platforms

- For AWS cloud: Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
- For Azure cloud: Azure Kubernetes Service

## Required terminology

The table describes the important terms for NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster. For more information visit the link to Kubernetes documentation.

**Table 1-1** Important terms

| Term                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pod                     | A Pod is a group of one or more containers, with shared storage and network resources, and a specification for how to run the containers. For more information on Pods, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                     |
| StatefulSet             | StatefulSet is the workload API object used to manage stateful applications and it represents a set of Pods with unique, persistent identities, and stable hostnames. For more information on StatefulSets, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> . |
| Job                     | Kubernetes jobs ensure that one or more pods execute their commands and exit successfully. For more information on Jobs, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                    |
| ConfigMap               | A ConfigMap is an API object used to store non-confidential data in key-value pairs. For more information on ConfigMaps, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                    |
| Service                 | A Service enables network access to a set of Pods in Kubernetes. For more information on Service, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                                           |
| Persistent Volume Claim | A PersistentVolumeClaim (PVC) is a request for storage by a user. For more information on Persistent Volumes, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                               |

**Table 1-1** Important terms (*continued*)

| Term                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Persistent Volume          | A PersistentVolume (PV) is a piece of storage in the cluster that has been provisioned by an administrator or dynamically provisioned using storage classes. For more information on Persistent Volumes, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                             |
| Custom Resource            | A Custom Resource (CR) is an extension of the Kubernetes API that is not necessarily available in a default Kubernetes installation. For more information on Custom Resources, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                       |
| Custom Resource Definition | The CustomResourceDefinition (CRD) API resource lets you define custom resources. For more information on CustomResourceDefinitions, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                                 |
| Secret                     | A Secret is an object that contains a small amount of sensitive data such as a password, a token, or a key. Such information might otherwise be put in a Pod specification or in a container image. For more information on Secrets, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> . |
| ServiceAccount             | A service account provides an identity for processes that run in a Pod. For more information on configuring the service accounts for Pods, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                           |
| ClusterRole                | An RBAC Role or ClusterRole contains rules that represent a set of permissions. Permissions are purely additive (there are no "deny" rules). For more information on ClusterRole, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                    |
| ClusterRoleBinding         | A role binding grants the cluster-wide permissions defined in a role to a user or set of users. For more information on ClusterRoleBinding, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                                          |
| Namespace                  | Kubernetes supports multiple virtual clusters backed by the same physical cluster. These virtual clusters are called namespaces. For more information on Namespaces, see <a href="#">Kubernetes Documentation</a> .                                                                 |

## User roles and permissions

Note the following for user authentication:

- An Administrator must define the custom user credentials by creating a secret; and then provide the secret name at the time of primary server deployment.



- A custom user is assigned the role of a NetBackup Security Administrator and can access the NetBackup Web UI after deployment.
- A custom user will be persisted during the pods restart or upgrade.
- For the custom user, you can change only the password after the deployment. The changed password will be persisted. If the username is changed after the deployment, an error message will be logged in the Operator pod.
- You can delete the secret after the primary server deployment. In that case, if you want to deploy or scale the media servers, you must create a new secret with the same username which was used in the primary server CR. The password can be the same or different. If you change the password, it is also changed in the primary server pod, and gets persisted.
- Do not create a local user in the pods (using the `kubectl exec` or `useradd` commands) as this user may or may not be persisted.
- The cloud provider user is supported through Single Sign-on (SSO). For the detailed user integration information, refer to the *NetBackup Administrator's Guide Volume I*.
- An **nbitanalyticsadmin** user is available in primary server container. This user is used as **Master Server User ID** while creating data collector policy for data collection on NetBackup IT Analytics portal.
- Service account that is used for this deployment is **netbackup-account** and it is defined in the `operator_deployment.yaml`.
- NetBackup runs most of the primary server services and daemons as non-root user (**nbsvcusr**).
- ClusterRole named **netbackup-role** is set in the NetBackup Operator to define the cluster wide permissions to the resources. This is defined in the `operator_deployment.yaml`.
- Appropriate roles and Kubernetes cluster specific permissions are set to the cluster at the time of cluster creation.
- After successful deployment of the primary and media servers, the operator creates a custom Kubernetes role with name `ResourceName-admin` whereas `Resource Name` is given in primary server or media server CR specification. The following permissions are provided in the respective namespaces:

| Resource name | API group | Allowed operations                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ConfigMaps    | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Nodes         | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li></ul>                                                                                    |

This role can be assigned to the NetBackup Administrator to view the pods that were created, and to execute into them. For more information on the access control, see [Kubernetes Access Control Documentation](#).

---

**Note:** One role would be created, only if primary and media servers are in same namespace with the same resource name prefix.

---

- *(AKS-specific only)* Your AKS cluster must have the RBAC enabled. To view the permissions set for the AKS cluster, use one of the following methods and verify if `enableRBAC` is set to **true**:
  - Run the following command:

```
az resource show -g <resource group name> -n <cluster name>
--resource-type
Microsoft.ContainerService/ManagedClusters --query
properties.enableRBAC
```
  - Run the `az aks list` command.
  - You can check the cluster's resource details at `resources.azure.com` and verify if `enableRBAC` is set to **true**.

## Role-based authentication (RBAC)

NetBackup Operator deployment uses a `serviceAccount` and it must have the following permissions:

Table 1-2

| Resource Name                                  | API Group | Allowed Operations                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ConfigMaps                                     | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Nodes                                          | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li></ul>                                                                                    |
| PersistentVolumeClaims                         | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| <i>(AKS-specific only)</i><br>PersistentVolume | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Pods                                           | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Pods/exec                                      | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Get</li></ul>                                                                                  |
| Secret                                         | default   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul>                                                                    |

**Table 1-2** (continued)

| Resource Name         | API Group             | Allowed Operations                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Services              | default               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| StatefulSet           | app                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Jobs                  | batch                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li></ul>                                                  |
| Primary servers       | netbackup.veritas.com | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| PrimaryServers/status | netbackup.veritas.com | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li></ul>                                                                  |
| Media servers         | netbackup.veritas.com | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Delete</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |

**Table 1-2** (continued)

| Resource Name       | API Group                 | Allowed Operations                                                                                    |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MediaServers/status | netbackup.veritas.com     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li></ul>                |
| Secrets             | netbackup.veritas.com     | Watch                                                                                                 |
| Secrets/status      | netbackup.veritas.com     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ Patch</li><li>■ Update</li></ul>                |
| Roles               | rbac.authorization.k8s.io | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Create</li><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |
| Storageclasses      | storage.k8s.io            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li></ul>                                  |
| Deployment          | app                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Get</li><li>■ List</li><li>■ Update</li><li>■ Watch</li></ul> |

## About MSDP Scaleout

MSDP Scaleout is based on MSDP. It empowers MSDP with high resilience and scalability capabilities to simplify management and reduce total cost of ownership.

It runs on multiple nodes to represent a single storage pool for NetBackup and other Veritas products to use. You can seamlessly scale out and scale up a MSDP Scaleout on demand. MSDP Scaleout automatically does failure detection and repair in the background.

It is deployed separately in NetBackup environment. The deployment process is with minimal user intervention. The core MSDP services run on each node to expose the storage optimized services, and manage a part of the cluster level data and metadata. Each MSDP Scaleout node is called MSDP engine.

See [“Deploying MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 110.

## MSDP Scaleout components

Following are the MSDP Scaleout components:

- **MDS (MetaData service)**  
MDS is an independent and stackable service that provides a single system view of MSDP Scaleout. It's an etcd cluster running inside the MDS pods. These pods run on different AKS or EKS nodes. The pod name has a format of **<cr-name>-uss-mds-<1,2...>**.  
The number of pods that get created depends on the number of MSDP Scaleout engines in a cluster. These pods are controlled by the MSDP operator.
  - 1 or 2 MSDP Scaleout engines: 1 pod
  - 3 or 4 MSDP Scaleout engines: 3 pods
  - 5 or more MSDP Scaleout engines: 5 pods
- **MSDP Scaleout Controller**  
Controller is a singleton service and the entry point of MSDP Scaleout that monitors and repairs MSDP Engines. It controls and manages the application-level business of the MSDP Scaleout. The Deployment object name has a format of **<cr-name>-uss-controller**. It is controlled by the MSDP operator.
- **MSDP Scaleout Engine**  
MSDP Engines provide the ability to write deduplicated data to the storage. The name of a MSDP engine pod is the corresponding FQDN of the static IP that is specified in the CR. Each MSDP engine pod has MSDP services such as spad, spool, and ocsd running. They are controlled by the MSDP operator.

## Limitations in MSDP Scaleout

MSDP Scaleout has the following limitations:

- It is not fully compliant with Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS).  
The internal services MSDP operator, MSDP Controller, and MDS of a MSDP Scaleout are not compliant with FIPS.  
MSDP is FIPS compliant. For more information, see the *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.
- Does not support SELinux.
- Supports only NBCA. Does not support ECA.
- Node group cross availability zone is not supported for EKS.
- Limited node failure tolerance.  
Backup and restore can fail if AKS/EKS node fails. If MSDP operator detects the MSDP Scaleout pod failure, it attempts to restart it and perform a repair

operation automatically. The repair operation can be delayed if AWS or Azure infrastructure or Kubernetes do not allow the pod to be restarted.

An Azure or AWS EBS volume cannot be attached to two different nodes at the same time. When the node which a volume is attached to fails, MSDP operator cannot run the same pod with the same Azure or AWS EBS volume on another node until the failed node is repaired or deleted by AKS or EKS.

A node auto-repair may take more than 20 minutes to finish. In some cases, it may be necessary to bring the node backup manually.

See [Azure Kubernetes Service \(AKS\) node auto-repair](#)

See [Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service \(EKS\) Documentation](#)

- IPv6 is not supported.

## About NetBackup Snapshot Manager

You must deploy Snapshot Manager solution in your Kubernetes cluster environment. The Kubernetes cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings. Before you deploy the solution, ensure that your environment meets the requirements.

See [“Prerequisites”](#) on page 125.

# Deployment

- [Chapter 2. Prerequisites for Kubernetes cluster configuration](#)
- [Chapter 3. Deployment with environment operators](#)
- [Chapter 4. Deploying NetBackup](#)
- [Chapter 5. Deploying NetBackup using Helm charts](#)
- [Chapter 6. Deploying MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Chapter 7. Deploying Snapshot Manager](#)
- [Chapter 8. Verifying Cloud Scale deployment](#)



# Prerequisites for Kubernetes cluster configuration

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Config-Checker utility](#)
- [Data-Migration for AKS](#)
- [Webhooks validation for EKS](#)

## Config-Checker utility

This section describes the working, execution and status details of the Config-Checker utility.

### How does the Config-Checker utility work

The Config-Checker utility performs checks on the deployment environment to verify that the environment meets the requirements, before starting the primary server and media server deployments.

How does the Config-Checker works:

- **RetainReclaimPolicy check:**  
This check verifies that the storage classes used for PVC creation in the CR have reclaim policy as **Retain**. The check fails if any of the storage classes do not have the **Retain** reclaim policy.  
For more information, see the 'Persistent Volumes Reclaiming' section of the *Kubernetes Documentation*.

- **MinimumVolumeSize check:**

This check verifies that the PVC storage capacity meets the minimum required volume size for each volume in the CR. The check fails if any of the volume capacity sizes does not meet the requirements.

Following are the minimum volume size requirements:

- Primary server:
  - Data volume size: 30Gi
  - Catalog volume size: 100Gi
  - Log volume size: 30Gi
- Media server:
  - Data volume size: 50Gi
  - Log volume size: 30Gi

- **Provisioner check:**

***EKS-specific only***

- Primary server: This will verify that the storage type provided is Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) for data and log volume. If any other driver type is used, the Config-Checker fails.
- Media server: This will verify that the storage type provided is Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) for data and log volume. Config-Checker fails if this requirement is not met for media server.

***AKS-specific only***

- This check verifies that the provisioner type used in defining the storage class is **Azure disk**, for the volumes in Media servers. If not the Config-Checker will fail. This check verifies that the provisioner type used in defining the storage class is not **Azure files** for the volumes in Media servers. That is data and log volumes in case of Media server.

- **(EKS-specific only) AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on check:**

This check verifies if the AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on is installed in the cluster. This load balancer controller is required for load balancer in the cluster. If this check fails, user must deploy the AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on

- **Cluster Autoscaler**

This autoscaler is required for autoscaling in the cluster. If autoscaler is not configured, then Config-Checker displays a warning message and continues with the deployment of NetBackup servers.

(EKS-specific only) This check verifies if the AWS Autoscaler add-on is installed in the cluster. For more information, refer to 'Autoscaling' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- **Volume expansion check:**

This check verifies the storage class name given for Primary server data and log volume and for Media server data and log volumes has

`AllowVolumeExpansion = true`. If Config-Checker fails with this check then it gives a warning message and continues with deployment of NetBackup media servers.

## Config-Checker execution and status details

Note the following points.

- Config-Checker is executed as a separate job in Kubernetes cluster for both the primary server and media server CRs respectively. Each job creates a pod in the cluster. Config-checker creates the pod in the operator namespace.

---

**Note:** Config-checker pod gets deleted after 4 hours.

---

- Execution summary of the Config-Checker can be retrieved from the Config-Checker pod logs using the `kubectl logs <configchecker-pod-name> -n <operator-namespace>` command.

This summary can also be retrieved from the operator pod logs using the `kubectl logs <operator-pod-name> -n <operator-namespace>` command.

- Following are the Config-Checker modes that can be specified in the Primary and Media CR:
  - **Default:** This mode executes the Config-Checker. If the execution is successful, the Primary and Media CRs deployment is started.
  - **Dryrun:** This mode only executes the Config-Checker to verify the configuration requirements but does not start the CR deployment.
  - **Skip:** This mode skips the Config-Checker execution of Config-Checker and directly start the deployment of the respective CR.
- Status of the Config-Checker can be retrieved from the primary server and media server CRs by using the `kubectl describe <PrimaryServer/MediaServer> <CR name> -n <namespace>` command.  
For example, `kubectl describe primaryservers environment-sample -n test`
- Following are the Config-Checker statuses:

- Success: Indicates that all the mandatory config checks have successfully passed.
- Failed: Indicates that some of the config checks have failed.
- Running: Indicates that the Config-Checker execution is in progress.
- Skip: Indicates that the Config-Checker is not executed because the `configcheckmode` specified in the CR is skipped.
- If the Config-Checker execution status is Failed, you can check the Config-Checker job logs using `kubectl logs <configchecker-pod-name> -n <operator-namespace>`. Review the error codes and error messages pertaining to the failure and update the respective CR with the correct configuration details to resolve the errors.  
For more information about the error codes, refer to [NetBackup™ Status Codes Reference Guide](#).
- If Config-Checker ran in **dryrun** mode and if user wants to run Config-Checker again with same values in Primary or Media server YAML as provided earlier, then user needs to delete respective CR of Primary or Media server. And then apply it again.
  - If it is primary server CR, delete primary server CR using the `kubectl delete -f <environment.yaml>` command.  
Or  
If it is media server CR, edit the Environment CR by removing the media server section in the `environment.yaml` file. Before removing the **mediaServer** section, you must save the content and note the location of the content. After removing section apply environment CR using `kubectl apply -f <environment.yaml>` command.
  - Apply the CR again. Add the required data which was deleted earlier at correct location, save it and apply the yaml using `kubectl apply -f <environment.yaml>` command.

## Data-Migration for AKS

This section describes the working, execution and status details of the Data-Migration for AKS.

### How Data-Migration works

Data migration job kicks-in whenever there is any change in the storage class name of the primary server's catalog, log and data volumes.

- Migration job is used to perform data transfer of Primary server's file system data from `Azure disks` to `Azure premium files` for existing NetBackup deployments.
- If user is deploying NetBackup for the first time, then it is considered as fresh installation and the user can directly utilize the `Azure premium files` for Primary server's catalog volume. Primary server log and data volume supports azure disks only.
- For existing NetBackup deployments, migration job would copy Primary server's old `Azure disk` catalog volume to new azure file volumes, except nbdb data, nbdb data will be copied to new azure disks based data volume. Logs can be migrated to new azure disk log volume.
- To invoke the migration job, the `Azure premium files` storage class must be provided in the `environment.yaml` file for catalog volume. User can also provide new azure disks storage class for log volume and new azure disk based data volume must be provided in `environment.yaml`.
- The migration status is updated to *Success* in primary server CRD post successful data migration.

---

**Note:** Migration will take longer time based on catalog data size.

---

## Data-Migration execution and status details

Data migration is carried out in form of **job** in NetBackup Kubernetes cluster for only the primary server CR. There will be a migration job per primary volume for data migration which will be part of NetBackup environment namespace. Each job creates a pod in the cluster.

- Execution summary of the Data migration can be retrieved from the migration pod logs using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n  
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

This summary can also be retrieved from the operator pod logs using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <netbackup-operator-pod-name> -n  
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

- Status of the data migration can be retrieved from the primary server CR by using the following command:

```
kubectl describe <PrimaryServer> <CR name> -n  
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

Following are the data migration statuses:

- **Success:** Indicates all necessary conditions for the migration of the Primary server are passed.
- **Failed:** Indicates some or all necessary conditions for the migration the Primary server are failed.
- **Running:** Indicates migration is in running state for the Primary server.
- If the Data migration execution status is failed, you can check the migration job logs using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n  
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

Review the error codes and error messages pertaining to the failure and update the primary server CR with the correct configuration details to resolve the errors. For more information about the error codes, refer to *NetBackup™ Status Codes Reference Guide*.

## Webhooks validation for EKS

This section describes the working, execution and status details of the Webhooks validation for EKS.

### How does the webhook validation works

- Webhooks are implemented to validate the CR input provided in the `sample/environment.yaml` file which is the interface of NetBackup installation on the EKS cluster.
- For each user input in the `sample/environment.yaml` file a validation webhook is implemented.
- If any of the input value is not in the required form, then webhooks displays an error and prevents the creation of an environment.
- For primary server deployment, following webhook validations have been implemented:
  - **Validate RetainReclaimPolicy:** This check verifies that the storage classes used for PVC creation in the CR have reclaim policy as **Retain**. The check fails if any of the webhook do not have the **Retain** reclaim policy.
  - **Validate MinimumVolumeSize:** This check verifies that the PVC storage capacity meets the minimum required volume size for each volume in the CR. The check fails if any of the volume capacity sizes does not meet the following requirements for Primary server.

- Catalog volume size: 100Gi
- Log volume size: 30Gi
- Data volume size: 30Gi
- Validate CSI driver: This will verify that the PV created is provisioned using the `efs.csi.aws.com` driver, that is, AWS Elastic file system (EFS) for volumes catalog. If any other driver type is used, the webhook fails.
- Validate AWS Elastic file system (EFS) controller add-on: Verifies if the AWS Elastic file system (EFS) controller add-on is installed on the cluster. This AWS Elastic file system (EFS) controller is required to use EFS as persistence storage for pods which will be running on cluster. Webhooks will check the EFS controller add-on is installed and it is running properly. If no, then validation error is displayed.
- AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on check: Verifies if the AWS load balancer controller add-on is installed on the cluster. This load balancer controller is required to use load balancer in the cluster. Webhooks will check the load balancer controller add-on is installed and it is running properly. If no, then a validation error is displayed.

## Webhooks validation execution details

Note the following points.

- A Webhook is an HTTP call back: An HTTP POST that occurs when an event-notification is sent through HTTP POST. A web application implementing Webhooks will POST a message to a URL when certain tasks happen.
- Webhooks are called when the following command is applied to create/update the environment to validate the CR input provided into the yaml file:  

```
kubectl apply -f sample/environment.yaml
```
- Webhook validates each check in sequence. Even if one of the validation fails then a validation error is displayed and the execution is stopped.
- The error must be fixed and the `environment.yaml` file must be applied so that the next validation check is performed.
- The environment is created only after webhook validations are passed.

# Deployment with environment operators

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About deployment with the environment operator](#)
- [Manual deployment](#)
- [Configuring the environment.yaml file](#)
- [Uninstalling NetBackup environment and the operators](#)
- [Applying security patches](#)

## About deployment with the environment operator

This section describes the deployment of the Veritas NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout on the following cloud providers:

- Azure Kubernetes Service in AKS cloud
- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service in EKS cloud

You can start by deploying the two environment operators that together manage the NetBackup environment, the primary server, the media servers, and the MSDP Scaleout storage servers.

## Prerequisites

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before proceeding with the deployment.

- Taints and tolerations allows you to mark (taint) a node so that no pods can schedule onto it unless a pod explicitly *tolerates* the taint. Marking nodes instead



of pods (as in node affinity/anti-affinity) is particularly useful for situations where most pods in the cluster must avoid scheduling onto the node.

To use this functionality, user must create the node pool/node group with the following detail:

- Add a label with certain key value. For example `key = nbpool, value = nbnodes`
- Add a taint with the same key and value which is used for label in above step with effect as *NoSchedule*.  
For example, `key = nbpool, value = nbnodes, effect = NoSchedule`

- Install Cert-Manager. You can use the following command to install the Cert-Manager:

```
$ kubectl apply -f
```

```
https://github.com/jetstack/cert-manager/releases/download/v1.12.3/cert-manager.yaml
```

For details, see *cert-manager Documentation*.

- A workstation or VM running Linux with the following:
  - Configure `kubectl` to access the cluster.
  - Install Azure/AWS CLI to access Azure/AWS resources.
  - Configure docker to be able to push images to the container registry.
  - Free space of approximately 15.5 GB on the location where you copy and extract the product installation TAR package file. If using docker locally, there should be approximately 15 GB available on the `/var/lib/docker` location so that the images can be loaded to the docker cache, before being pushed to the container registry.

### AKS-specific

- A Kubernetes cluster in Azure Kubernetes Service in AKS with multiple nodes. Using separate node pool is recommended for the NetBackup servers, MSDP Scaleout deployments and for different media server objects. It is required to have separate node pool for Snapshot Manager data plane.
- Taints are set on the node pool while creating the node pool in the cluster. Tolerations are set on the pods.
- Define storage class of **AzureFiles** and **Azure managed disks** for primary and **Azure managed disks** for media and MSDPX.
- Enable AKS Uptime SLA. AKS Uptime SLA is recommended for a better resiliency. For information about AKS Uptime SLA and to enable it, see 'Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS) Uptime SLA' section in *Azure Kubernetes Service Documentation*.

- Access to a container registry that the Kubernetes cluster can access, like an Azure Kubernetes Service Container Registry.

#### **EKS-specific**

- A Kubernetes cluster in Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service in EKS with multiple nodes. Using separate node group is recommended for the NetBackup servers, MSDP Scaleout deployments and for different media server objects. It is required to have separate node pool for Snapshot Manager data plane.
- Taints are set on the node group while creating the node group in the cluster. Tolerations are set on the pods.
- Access to a container registry that the Kubernetes cluster can access, like an Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service Container Registry.
- AWS network load balancer controller add-on must be installed for using network load balancer capabilities.
- AWS EFS-CSI driver must be installed for statically provisioning the PV or PVC in EFS for primary server.

For more information on installing the load balancer add-on controller and EFS-CSI driver, See [“About the Load Balancer service”](#) on page 165.

## Contents of the TAR file

Download the TAR file from the Veritas download center.

The TAR file contains the following:

**Table 3-1** TAR contents

| Item                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OCI images in the <code>/images</code> directory                | These docker image files that are loaded and then copied to the container registry to run in Kubernetes. They include NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout application images and the operator images. |
| MSDP kubectl plug-in at <code>/bin/kubectl-msdp</code>          | Used to deploy and manage the MSDP Scaleout operator tasks.                                                                                                                                   |
| Configuration(.yaml) files at <code>/operator</code> directory  | You can edit these to suit your configuration requirements before installation.                                                                                                               |
| Sample product (.yaml) files at <code>/samples</code> directory | You can use these as templates to define your NetBackup environment.                                                                                                                          |
| README.md                                                       | Readme file.                                                                                                                                                                                  |

## Known limitations

Here are some known limitations.

- Changes to the CorePattern which specifies the path used for storing core dump files in case of a crash are not supported. CorePattern can only be set during initial deployment.
- Changes to MSDP Scaleout credential autoDelete, which allows automatic deletion of credential after use, is not supported. The autoDelete value can only be set during initial deployment.

## Manual deployment

### Deploying the operators

To perform these steps, log on to the Linux workstation or VM where you have extracted the TAR file.

#### To deploy the operators

- 1 Install the MSDP kubectl plug-in at some location which is set in the path environment variable of your shell. For example, copy the `kubectl-msdp` file to `/usr/local/bin/`.
- 2 Run the following commands to load each of the product images to the local docker instance.

```
$ docker load -i netbackup-main-<version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i netbackup-media-<version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i netbackup-operator-<version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i netbackup-requestrouter-<version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i pdcluster-<msdpCluster_version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i pdde-<msdpCluster_version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i pdk8soptr-<msdpCluster_version>.tar.gz
$ docker load -i
netbackup-flexsnap-$(SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION).tar.gz
```

Run the command `docker image ls` to confirm that the product images are loaded properly to the docker cache.

`<version>`: Represents the NetBackup product version.

`<msdpCluster_version>`: Represents the cluster version.

- 3 Run the following commands to re-tag the images to associate them with your container registry, keep the image name and version same as original:

```
(AKS-specific) $ REGISTRY=<example.azurecr.io> (Replace with your  
own container registry name)  
  
(EKS-specific) $ REGISTRY=<<AccountID>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com  
  
$ docker tag netbackup/main:<version>  
${REGISTRY}/netbackup/main:<version>  
  
$ docker tag netbackup/media:<version>  
${REGISTRY}/netbackup/media:<version>  
  
$ docker tag netbackup/operator:<version>  
${REGISTRY}/netbackup/operator:<version>  
  
$ docker tag netbackup/requestrouter:<version>  
${REGISTRY}/netbackup/requestrouter:<version>  
  
$ docker tag uss-engine:<msdpCluster_version>  
${REGISTRY}/uss-engine:<msdpCluster_version>  
  
$ docker tag uss-controller:<msdpCluster_version>  
${REGISTRY}/uss-controller:<msdpCluster_version>  
  
$ docker tag uss-mds:<msdpCluster_version>  
${REGISTRY}/uss-mds:<msdpCluster_version>  
  
$ docker tag msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version>  
${REGISTRY}/msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version>  
  
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker tag  
veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
```

```
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
```

#### **4** (*EKS-specific*) Login using the following command:

```
docker login -u AWS -p $(aws ecr get-login-password --region
<region-name>) <account-id>.dkr.ecr.<region-name>.amazonaws.com
```

If the repository is not created, then create the repository using the following command:

```
aws ecr create-repository --repository-name <image-name> --region
<region-name>
```

For example, `aws ecr create-repository --repository-name veritas/flexsnap-datamover --region us-east-2`

**5** Run the following commands to push the images to the container registry.

```
$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/netbackup/main:<version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/netbackup/media:<version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/netbackup/operator:<version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/netbackup/requestrouter:<version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/uss-engine:<msdpCluster_version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/uss-controller:<msdpCluster_version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/uss-mds:<msdpCluster_version>

$ docker push ${REGISTRY}/msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version>

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker push
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
```

**6** Create a namespace for deploying the NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout operators. These instructions use the default ***netbackup-operator-system*** namespace but a custom namespace is also supported, run:

```
$ kubectl create namespace netbackup-operator-system
```

- 7 Install the MSDP Scaleout operator in the created namespace, using this command. To run this command you must define a full image name in step 3, define a storage class for storing logs from the MSDP operator, and define node selector labels (optional) for scheduling the MSDP operator pod on specific nodes. See [“Prerequisites”](#) on page 32.

```
$ kubectl msdp init --image
${REGISTRY}/msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version> --storageclass x
--namespace netbackup-operator-system -l key1=value1
```

- 8 To verify that the MSDP Scaleout operator is running, run:

```
$ kubectl get all --namespace netbackup-operator-system
```

Here, we are using the namespace created in step 5.

The **msdp-operator** pod should show status as *Running*.

- 9 In this step, configure the namespace, image name, and node selector to use for the NetBackup operator image by editing the provided configuration yaml files.

- (Optional) Perform this step only when using a custom namespace. Edit the file `operator/kustomization.yaml` and change `namespace` to your custom namespace. For example: *namespace: my-custom-namespace*
- Edit the file `operator/kustomization.yaml` and change **newName** and **newTag**. For example:

```
images:
  - name: netbackupoperator
    newName: example.com/netbackup/operator
    newTag: 'SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION'
```

- Edit the `operator/patches/operator_patch.yaml` file to add or remove node selectors and toleration that control what nodes Kubernetes may schedule the operator to run on. Use the key value pair same as given during cloud node creation. For example:

```
nodeSelector:
  nbpool: nbnodes
  # Support node taints by adding pod tolerations equal to the
  specified nodeSelectors
  # For Toleration NODE_SELECTOR_KEY used as a key and
  NODE_SELECTOR_VALUE as a value.
tolerations:
  - key: nbpool
```

```
operator: "Equal"
value: nbnodes
```

- 10** Configure the namespace, image name, and node selector to use for NetBackup Snapshot Manager operator image by editing the provided configuration yaml files. Edit the `operator/kustomization.yaml` file and change **newName** and **newTag**. Also change Snapshot Manager operator's node selector and toleration (`CONTROL_NODE_KEY` and `CONTROL_NODE_VALUE`).

The value of `CONTROL_NODE_KEY` and `CONTROL_NODE_VALUE` should match with the value of the fields listed in `operator/patches/operator_patch.yaml` > `nodeSelector` (`labelKey`, `labelValue`) and tolerations (`key`, `value`), so that the Snapshot Manager operator will also run on the same node as NetBackup operator. For example:

```
images:
- name: cloudpointoperator
  newName: example.com/veritas/flexsnap-deploy
  newTag: 'SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION'

patches:
- target:
    kind: Deployment
    name: flexsnap-operator
  patch: |
    - op: replace
      path: /spec/template/spec/tolerations/0/key
      value: nbu-control-pool
    - op: replace
      path: /spec/template/spec/tolerations/0/value
      value: nbupool
    - op: replace
      path: /spec/template/spec/affinity/nodeAffinity/
requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution/nodeSelectorTerms/0/matchExpressions/0/key

      value: nbu-control-pool
    - op: replace
      path: /spec/template/spec/affinity/nodeAffinity/
requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution/nodeSelectorTerms/0/matchExpressions/0/values/0

      value: nbupool
```



- 11** To install the NetBackup and Snapshot Manager operator, run the following command from the installer's root directory:

```
$ kubectl apply -k operator
```

- 12** To verify if the operators are running, run:

```
$ kubectl get all --namespace netbackup-operator-system
```

Verify that `pod/netbackup-operator` and `pod/flexsnap-operator` STATUS is showing as *Running*.

## Deploying NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout

After the operators are deployed, you can deploy the NetBackup and MSDP Scaleout environment.

**To deploy NetBackup primary, media, and MSDP Scaleout components:**

- 1 Create a Kubernetes namespace where your new NetBackup environment will run. Run the command:

```
kubectl create namespace nb-example
```

Where, *nb-example* is the name of the namespace. The Primary, Media, and MSDP Scaleout application namespace must be different from the one used by the operators. It is recommended to use two namespaces. One for the operators, and a second one for the applications.

- 2 Create a secret to hold the primary server credentials. Those credentials are configured in the NetBackup primary server, and other resources in the NetBackup environment use them to communicate with and configure the primary server. The secret must include fields for `username` and `password`. If you are creating the secret by YAML, the type should be opaque or basic-auth. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
  kind: Secret
  metadata:
    name: primary-credentials
    namespace: nb-example
  type: kubernetes.io/basic-auth
  stringData:
    username: nbuser
    password: p@ssw0rd
```

You can also use this command to create a secret.

```
$ kubectl create secret generic primary-credentials --namespace
nb-example --from-literal=username='nbuser'
--from-literal=password='p@ssw0rd'
```

- 3 Create a KMS DB secret to hold Host Master Key ID (`HMKID`), Host Master Key passphrase (`HMKpassphrase`), Key Protection Key ID (`KPKID`), and Key Protection Key passphrase (`KPKpassphrase`) for NetBackup Key Management Service. If creating the secret by YAML, the type should be `_opaque_`. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: example-key-secret
  namespace: nb-example
type: Opaque
stringData:
  HMKID: HMKID
  HMKpassphrase: HMKpassphrase
  KPKID: KPKID
  KPKpassphrase: KPKpassphrase
```

You can also create a secret using `kubectl` from the command line:

```
$ kubectl create secret generic example-key-secret --namespace
nb-namespace --from-literal=HMKID="HMKID"
--from-literal=HMKpassphrase="HMKpassphrase"
--from-literal=KPKID="KPKID"
--from-literal=KPKpassphrase="KPKpassphrase"
```

For more details on NetBackup deduplication engine credential rules, see:  
[https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en\\_US/article.100048511](https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en_US/article.100048511)

- 4 Create a secret to hold the MSDP Scaleout credentials for the storage server. The secret must include fields for `username` and `password` and must be located in the same namespace as the Environment resource. If creating the secret by YAML, the type should be `_opaque_` or `_basic-auth_`. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
  kind: Secret
  metadata:
    name: msdp-secret1
    namespace: nb-example
  type: kubernetes.io/basic-auth
  stringData:
    username: nbuser
    password: p@ssw0rd
```

You can also create a secret using `kubectl` from the command line:

```
$ kubectl create secret generic msdp-secret1 --namespace
nb-example --from-literal=username='nbuser'
--from-literal=password='p@ssw0rd'
```

---

**Note:** You can use the same secret for the primary server credentials (from step 2) and the MSDP Scaleout credentials, so the following step is optional. However, to use the primary server secret in an MSDP Scaleout, you must set the `credential.autoDelete` property to *false*. The sample file includes an example of setting the property. The default value is *true*, in which case the secret may be deleted before all parts of the environment have finished using it.

---

- 5 (Optional) Create a secret to hold the KMS key details. Specify KMS Key only if the KMS Key Group does not already exist and you need to create.

---

**Note:** When reusing storage from previous deployment, the KMS Key Group and KMS Key may already exist. In this case, provide KMS Key Group only.

---

If creating the secret by YAML, the type should be `_opaque_`. For example:

```
apiVersion: v1
  kind: Secret
  metadata:
    name: example-key-secret
    namespace: nb-example
  type: Opaque
  stringData:
    username: nbuser
    passphrase: 'test passphrase'
```

You can also create a secret using `kubectl` from the command line:

```
$ kubectl create secret generic example-key-secret --namespace
nb-example --from-literal=username="nbuser"
--from-literal=passphrase="test passphrase"
```

You may need this key for future data recovery. After you have successfully deployed and saved the key details. It is recommended that you delete this secret and the corresponding key info secret.

- 6 (Optional for AKS-specific) Create a secret to hold the MSDP S3 root credentials if you need MSDP S3 service. The secret must include `accessKey` and `secretKey`, and must be located in the same namespace as the Environment resource.

- `accessKey` must match the regex pattern `^[\w]+$` and has the length in the range [16, 128].
- `secretKey` must match the regex pattern `^[\w+\/]+$` and has the length in the range [32, 128].

It is recommended that you generate random S3 root credentials. Run the following command:

```
$ kubectl msdp generate-s3-secret --namespace nb-example
--s3secret s3-secret1
```

Save the generated S3 root credentials at a secure place for later use.

- 7 Configure the `samples/environment.yaml` file according to your requirements. This file defines a primary server, media servers, and scale out MSDP Scaleout storage servers. See “[Configuring the `environment.yaml` file](#)” on page 56. for details.
- 8 Apply the environment yaml file, using the same application namespace created in step 1.

```
$ kubectl apply --namespace nb-example --filename environment.yaml
```

Use this command to verify the new environment resource in your cluster:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace nb-example environments
```

The output should look like:

| NAME               | AGE |
|--------------------|-----|
| environment-sample | 2m  |

After a few minutes, NetBackup finishes starting up on the primary server, and then the media servers and MSDP Scaleout storage servers you configured in the environment resource start appearing. Run:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace nb-example  
all,environments,primaryservers,mediaservers,msdp*scaleouts
```

The output should show:

- All pod status as Ready and Running

| NAME                        | READY | STATUS  |
|-----------------------------|-------|---------|
| pod/dedupe1-uss-controller- | 1/1   | Running |
| pod/dedupe1-uss-mds-1       | 1/1   | Running |

- For `msdp*scaleout` SIZE = READY, for example: 4=4.

| NAME                                   | SIZE | READY |
|----------------------------------------|------|-------|
| msdp*scaleout.msdp.veritas.com/dedupe1 | 4    | 4     |

- `environment.netbackup` should show STATUS as Success

| NAME                                                 | STATUS  |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| environment.netbackup.veritas.com/environment-sample | Success |

- 9** To start using your newly deployed environment sign-in to NetBackup web UI. Open a web browser and navigate to `https://<primaryserver>/webui/login` URL.

The primary server is the host name or IP address of the NetBackup primary server.

You can retrieve the primary server's hostname by using the command:

```
$ kubectl describe primaryserver.netbackup.veritas.com/<primary  
server CR name>--namespace <namespace_name>
```

See [“Deploying MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 110.

## Deploying NetBackup and Snapshot Manager

After the operators are deployed as mentioned in the following section, you can deploy the NetBackup and Snapshot Manager environment:

See [“Deploying the operators”](#) on page 35.

**To deploy NetBackup primary, media and Snapshot Manager components**

- 1 Create a Kubernetes namespace where your new NetBackup environment will run. Run the following command:

```
kubect1 create namespace nb-example
```

Where, *nb-example* is the name of the namespace. The Primary, Media, and Snapshot Manager application namespace must be different from the one used by the operators. It is recommended to use two namespaces. One for the operators, and a second one for the applications.

- 2 Configure the `samples/environment.yaml` file according to your requirements. This file defines a primary server, media servers, and Snapshot Manager servers. See [“Configuring the `environment.yaml` file”](#) on page 56. for details.



- 3** Apply the `environment.yaml` file, using the same application namespace created in the above step.

```
kubectl apply --namespace nb-example --filename environment.yaml
```

Use this command to verify the new environment resource in your cluster:

```
kubectl get --namespace nb-example environments
```

After a few minutes, NetBackup finishes starting up the primary server, media servers and Snapshot Manager servers in the sequence that you configured in the environment resource. Snapshot Manager is registered with NetBackup and cloud provider is configured automatically.

Run the following command:

```
kubectl get --namespace netbackup-environment  
all,environments,primaryservers,cpservers,mediaservers
```

The output would be displayed as follows:

```
$ kubectl get all,environments,primaryservers,mediaservers,  
cpservers,msdp*scaleouts -n netbackup-environment
```

| NAME                                                                | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| pod/flexsnap-agent-33e649abd383410ea618751f7b2eb8ae-598b8b747-957xd | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 28m |
| pod/flexsnap-agent-688d478bc8-hxgrk                                 | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-api-gateway-69cbbfc844-f6whb                           | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-certauth-6f65894b69-njfhf                              | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 44m |
| pod/flexsnap-coordinator-749649c7-fgs4t                             | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-collector-7445f6fb9f-bqfqg                     | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-csvfz                                          | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-ht7w8                                          | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-lkdgt                                          | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-rzrvv                                          | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |
| pod/flexsnap-fluentd-spgkc                                          | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 43m |

```

pod/flexsnap-listener-664674-phjnd
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/flexsnap-mongodb-f6b744df5-p4hfv
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/flexsnap-nginx-8647f57db8-rzkt5
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/flexsnap-notification-7db95868f5-dpx7z
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/flexsnap-rabbitmq-0
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/flexsnap-scheduler-68d8b75d75-5q4fk
    1/1      Running    0          43m
pod/nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-44.vxindia.veritas.com
    1/1      Running    0          72m
pod/nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-45.vxindia.veritas.com
    2/2      Running    0          68m
pod/nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-46.vxindia.veritas.com
    2/2      Running    0          64m
pod/nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-47.vxindia.veritas.com
    2/2      Running    0          60m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-56r7h
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-hvfw7
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-jx46x
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-pz7w8
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-r2kk
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-agent-vx8gc
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-controller-
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-controller-1
    1/1      Running    0          72m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-mds-1
    1/1      Running    0          75m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-mds-2
    1/1      Running    0          74m
pod/nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-mds-3
    1/1      Running    0          73m
pod/nbux-eks-medial-media-0

```

```

      1/1      Running    0          55m
pod/nbux-eks-primary-0
      1/1      Running    0          101m

```

| NAME        | TYPE    | CLUSTER-IP |
|-------------|---------|------------|
| EXTERNAL-IP | PORT(S) |            |

|                              |           |              |  |
|------------------------------|-----------|--------------|--|
|                              | AGE       |              |  |
| service/flexsnap-api-gateway | ClusterIP | 172.20.92.70 |  |
| <none>                       | 8472/TCP  |              |  |

|                           |           |               |  |
|---------------------------|-----------|---------------|--|
|                           | 43m       |               |  |
| service/flexsnap-certauth | ClusterIP | 172.20.222.22 |  |
| <none>                    | 9000/TCP  |               |  |

|                                  |           |               |  |
|----------------------------------|-----------|---------------|--|
|                                  | 43m       |               |  |
| service/flexsnap-fluentd-service | ClusterIP | 172.20.141.61 |  |
| <none>                           | 24224/TCP |               |  |

|                          |           |                |  |
|--------------------------|-----------|----------------|--|
|                          | 43m       |                |  |
| service/flexsnap-mongodb | ClusterIP | 172.20.157.102 |  |
| <none>                   | 27017/TCP |                |  |

|                        |              |              |  |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|--|
|                        | 43m          |              |  |
| service/flexsnap-nginx | LoadBalancer | 172.20.187.1 |  |

```
nbux-eks-cpserver-1-2b677a3f6b6ffe48.elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
```

```
443:31318/TCP,5671:31902/TCP
```

|                           |           |              |  |
|---------------------------|-----------|--------------|--|
|                           | 43m       |              |  |
| service/flexsnap-rabbitmq | ClusterIP | 172.20.33.99 |  |
| <none>                    | 5671/TCP  |              |  |

43m

service/ip-10-239-207-44-host-nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-44-vxindia-ve

LoadBalancer 172.20.186.216  
 k8s-ns155-ip102392-8d0152d6a0-8d77c9a84d1dd6a0.  
 elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
 10082:30397/TCP,10102:31873/TCP,10086:32374/TCP,  
 443:30732/TCP,111:30721/TCP,662:32206/TCP,875:32361/TCP,892:31540/TCP,2049:30676/TCP,  
 45209:31944/TCP,58329:30149/TCP,139:31587/TCP,445:31252/TCP 73m  
 service/ip-10-239-207-45-host-nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-45-vxindia-ve

LoadBalancer 172.20.23.36  
 k8s-ns155-ip102392-410db5113c-791da4601d58039f.  
 elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
 10082:31116/TCP,10102:31904/TCP,10086:32468/TCP,  
 443:32693/TCP,111:32658/TCP,662:31151/TCP,875:30175/TCP,892:  
 31126/TCP,2049:31632/TCP,45209:32602/TCP,58329:31082/TCP,139:31800/TCP,445:30795/TCP

73m

service/ip-10-239-207-46-host-nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-46-vxindia-ve

LoadBalancer 172.20.6.179  
 k8s-ns155-ip102392-1c160eed54-c975ee450ede1c20.  
 elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
 10082:31927/TCP,10102:31309/TCP,10086:30285/TCP,  
 443:32648/TCP,111:32348/TCP,662:32170/TCP,875:31854/TCP,892:30842/TCP,2049:31357/TCP,  
 45209:30002/TCP,58329:32408/TCP,139:30882/TCP,445:32017/TCP 73m  
 service/ip-10-239-207-47-host-nbux-marketplace-10-239-207-47-vxindia-ve

LoadBalancer 172.20.221.124  
 k8s-ns155-ip102392-bb1f5b1cbe-22e4275c1af33239.  
 elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com  
 10082:30137/TCP,10102:30727/TCP,10086:32649/TCP,  
 443:30474/TCP,111:32690/TCP,662:31740/TCP,875:30437/TCP,892:32532/TCP,2049:32641/TCP,  
 45209:31259/TCP,58329:31070/TCP,139:32393/TCP,445:30296/TCP 73m  
 service/nbux-eks  
 -dedupel-uss-controller ClusterIP 172.20.197.231 <none>  
 10100/TCP

74m

service/nbux-eks

|                  |           |      |        |
|------------------|-----------|------|--------|
| -dedupel-uss-mds | ClusterIP | None | <none> |
|------------------|-----------|------|--------|

```
2379/TCP,2380/TCP

75m
service/nbux-eks
-dedupe1-uss-mds-client      ClusterIP      172.20.226.45    <none>
2379/TCP

75m
service/nbux-eks
-media1-media-0              LoadBalancer   172.20.146.140
nbux-eks-media1-media-0-1a525c3f2587c8cf.elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com

13782:31414/TCP,1556:31562/TCP

56m
service/nbux-eks-primary      LoadBalancer   172.20.108.104
nbux-eks-primary-c0f9de7ce7e231cd.elb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
13781:30252/TCP,13782:31446/TCP,1556:31033/TCP,443:31517/TCP,8443:32237/

TCP,22:30436/TCP  101m
NAME              DESIRED  CURRENT  READY  UP-TO-DATE  AVAILABLE
  NODE SELECTOR  AGE
daemonset.apps/
flexsnap-fluentd    5         5         5         5             5
      <none>      43m
daemonset.apps/
nbux-eks-
dedupe1-uss-agent    6         6         6         6             6
      agentpool

      =msdpxpool  73m
NAME              READY    UP-TO-DATE  AVAILABLE
  AGE
deployment.apps/
flexsnap-agent      1/1      1             1
      43m
deployment.apps/
flexsnap-agent-
```

|                                            |     |         |         |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|---------|---------|
| 33e649abd383410ea618751f7b2eb8ae           | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 28m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-api-gateway                       | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-certauth                          | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 44m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-coordinator                       | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-fluentd-collector                 | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-listener                          | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-mongodb                           | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-nginx                             | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-notification                      | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| deployment.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-scheduler                         | 1/1 | 1       | 1       |
| 43m                                        |     |         |         |
| NAME                                       |     | DESIRED | CURRENT |
| READY                                      | AGE |         |         |
| replicaset.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-agent-                            |     |         |         |
| 33e649abd383410ea618751f7b2eb8ae-598b8b747 |     | 1       | 1       |
| 1                                          | 28m |         |         |
| replicaset.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-agent-688d478bc8                  |     | 1       | 1       |
| 1                                          | 43m |         |         |
| replicaset.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-api-gateway-69cbbfc844            |     | 1       | 1       |
| 1                                          | 43m |         |         |
| replicaset.apps/                           |     |         |         |
| flexsnap-certauth-6f65894b69               |     | 1       | 1       |

```

1          44m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-coordinator-749649c7          1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-fluentd-collector-7445f6fb9f    1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-listener-664674                1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-mongodb-f6b744df5              1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-nginx-8647f57db8                1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-notification-7db95868f5         1          1
1          43m
replicaset.apps/
flexsnap-scheduler-68d8b75d75            1          1
1          43m
NAME                                     READY   AGE
statefulset.apps/
flexsnap-rabbitmq                       1/1     43m
statefulset.apps/
nbux-eks-dedupe1-uss-controller         2/2     73m
statefulset.apps/
nbux-eks-medial-media                   1/1     55m
statefulset.apps/
nbux-eks-primary                       1/1     101m
NAME                                     READY   AGE   STATUS
environment.netbackup.
veritas.com/nbux-eks                     4/4     102m   Success
NAME                                     TAG     AGE   STATUS
primaryserver.netbackup.
veritas.com/nbux-eks                     10.1.1.0085  102m   Success
NAME                                     TAG     AGE   PRIMARY  SERVER
STATUS
mediaserver.netbackup.
veritas.com/nbux-eks-medial 10.1.1.0085  56m   nbux-marketplace

```

```

-10-239-207-42.vxindia.veritas.com  Success
NAME                                TAG                                AGE    STATUS
cpserver.netbackup.
veritas.com/nbux-eks-cpserver-1    10.1.1.0.1073                    44m    Success
NAME                                AGE    TAG                                SIZE    READY
msdp*scaleout.msdp.
veritas.com/nbux-eks-dedupe1       75m    17.1.0085                        4        4

```

## Configuring the environment.yaml file

The `environment.yaml` file lets you configure the primary server, media servers, scale out MSDP Scaleout storage and Snapshot Manager servers. The file contains five sections, the first section contains parameters that are applicable to all the servers, rest of the sections are one each for the primary, media, MSDP Scaleout and Snapshot Manager servers.

The following configurations apply to all the components:

**Table 3-2** Common environment parameters

| Parameter                                                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| name: <b>environment-sample</b>                                                                                                         | Specify the name of the environment in your cluster.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| namespace: <b>example-ns</b>                                                                                                            | Specify the namespace where all the NetBackup resources are managed. If not specified here, then it will be the current namespace when you run the command <code>kubectl apply -f</code> on this file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| (AKS-specific) containerRegistry: <b>example.azurecr.io</b><br>(EKS-specific) containerRegistry: <b>example.us-east-2.amazonaws.com</b> | Specify a container registry that the cluster has access. NetBackup images are pushed to this registry.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| tag: <b>10.3</b>                                                                                                                        | This tag is used for all images in the environment. Specifying a 'tag' value on a sub-resource affects the images for that sub-resource only. For example, if you apply an EEB that affects only primary servers, you might set the 'primary.tag' to the custom tag of that EEB. The primary server runs with that image, but the media servers and MSDP scaleouts continue to run images tagged '10.3'. Beware that the values that look like numbers are treated as numbers in YAML even though this field needs to be a string; quote this to avoid misinterpretation. |
| paused: <b>false</b>                                                                                                                    | Specify whether the NetBackup operator attempts to reconcile the differences between this YAML specification and the current Kubernetes cluster state. Only set it to true during maintenance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



**Table 3-2** Common environment parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| configCheckMode: <b>default</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | This controls whether certain configuration restrictions are checked or enforced during setup. Other allowed values are skip and dryrun.                                                                                                                 |
| corePattern:<br><b>/corefiles/core.%e.%p.%t</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Specify the path to use for storing core files in case of a crash.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (AKS-specific)<br>loadBalancerAnnotations: service.beta.kubernetes.io/ azure-load-balancer- internal-subnet:<br><i>example-subnet</i><br><br>(EKS-specific)<br>loadBalancerAnnotations:<br><del>service.beta.kubernetes.io/ aws-load-balancer-subnets</del><br><i>example-subnet1 name</i> | Specify the annotations to be added for the network load balancer                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| emailServerConfigmapName                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Name of the configmap that contains required details to configure the email server in NetBackup.                                                                                                                                                         |
| drInfoSecretName                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ( <i>Optional</i> ) Name of secret created to pass DR information such as <b>passphrase</b> and <b>e-mail address</b> . If user has not provided this secret, default catalog backup policy will not be created automatically by the NetBackup Operator. |

**Note:** (*EKS-specific*) If NetBackup is upgraded form 10.0.0.1, then delete the following configuration from the `environment.yaml` file from **spec.loadBalancerAnnotations** section:

```
service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-target-group-attributes:
preserve_client_ip.enabled=true
```

The following section describes Snapshot Manager related parameters. You may also deploy without any Snapshot Manager. In that case, remove the cpServer section entirely from the configuration file.

**Table 3-3** Snapshot Manager parameters

| Parameter | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cpServer: | This specifies Snapshot Manager configurations.                                                                                                                                            |
| -name     | Currently only single instance of Snapshot Manager deployment is supported. It is also possible to have no Snapshot Managers configured; in this case, delete the cpServer section itself. |

**Table 3-3** Snapshot Manager parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| containerRegistry                | ( <i>Optional</i> ) Specify a container registry that the cluster has access. Snapshot Manager images are pushed to this registry which overrides the one defined in <b>Common environment parameters</b> table above.                                                                                             |
| tag:                             | This tag overrides the one defined in <b>Common environment parameters</b> table above. The Snapshot Manager images are shipped with tags different from the NetBackup primary, media, and MSDP images.                                                                                                            |
| networkLoadBalancer: annotations | Annotations to be provided to the network load balancer. All networkLoadBalancer annotations are supported. These values are merged with the values provided in the <b>loadBalancerAnnotations</b> . The duplicate values provided here, override the corresponding values in the <b>loadBalancerAnnotations</b> . |
| networkLoadBalancer: ipaddr      | IP address to be assigned to the network load balancer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| networkLoadBalancer: fqdn        | FQDN to be assigned to the network load balancer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| log.capacity                     | Size for log volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| log.storageClassName             | Storage class for log volume. It must be EFS based storage class.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| data.capacity                    | Size for data volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| data.storageClassName            | EBS based storage class for data volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| controlPlane.nodePool            | Name of the control plane node pool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| controlPlane.labelKey            | Label and taint key of the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| controlPlane.labeValue           | Label and taint value of the control plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| dataPlane.nodePool               | Name of the data plane node pool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| dataPlane.labelKey               | Label and taint key of the data plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| dataPlane.labelValue             | Label and taint value of the data plane.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| proxySettings.vx_http_proxy:     | Address to be used as the proxy for all HTTP connections. For example, "http://proxy.example.com:8080/"                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Table 3-3** Snapshot Manager parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| proxySettings.vx_https_proxy: | Address to be used as the proxy for all HTTPS connections. For example, "http://proxy.example.com:8080/"                                                                                |
| proxySettings.vx_no_proxy:    | Address that are allowed to bypass the proxy server. You can specify host name, IP addresses and domain names in this parameter. For example, "localhost,mycompany.com,169.254.169.254" |

The following configurations apply to the primary server. The values specified in the following table can override the values specified in the table above.

**Table 3-4** Environment parameters for the primary server

| Paragraph                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| paused: <i>false</i>                                             | Specifies whether the NetBackup operator attempts to reconcile the differences between this YAML specification and the current Kubernetes cluster state. Set it to <i>true</i> only during maintenance. This applies only to the environment object. To pause reconciliation of the managed primary server, for example, you must set <code>spec.primary.paused</code> . Setting <code>spec.paused:true</code> ceases updates to the managed resources, including updates to their 'paused' status. Entries in the media servers and MSDP scaleouts lists also support the 'paused' field. The default value is <i>false</i> . |
| primary                                                          | Specifies attributes specific to the primary server resources. Every environment has exactly one primary server, so this section cannot be left blank.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| name: primary-name                                               | Set <code>resourceNamePrefix</code> to control the name of the primary server. The default value is the same as the environment's name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| tag: <b>10.3-special</b>                                         | To use a different image tag specifically for the primary server, uncomment this value and provide the desired tag. This overrides the tag specified in the common section.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| nodeSelector:<br>labelKey: kubernetes.io/os<br>labelValue: linux | Specify a key and value that identifies nodes where the primary server pod runs.<br><b>Note:</b> This <b>labelKey</b> and <b>labelValue</b> must be the same label key:value pair used during cloud node creation which would be used as a toleration for primary server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Table 3-4** Environment parameters for the primary server (*continued*)

| Paragraph                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>networkLoadBalancer:</p> <p>(AKS-specific) annotations: service.beta.kubernetes.io / azure-load-balancer-internal-subnet: example-subnet</p> <p>(EKS-specific) annotations: service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: example-subnet1 name</p> <p>ipList:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ipAddr: 4.3.2.1</li> <li>fqdn: primary.example.com</li> </ul> | <p>Uncomment the annotations to specify additional primary server-specific annotations. These values are merged with the values given in the loadBalancerAnnotations above. Any duplicate values given here override the corresponding values above.</p> <p>Next, specify the hostname and IP address of the primary server.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| credSecretName: <b>primary-credential-secret</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | This determines the credentials for the primary server. Media servers use these credentials to register themselves with the primary server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| itAnalyticsPublicKey: <b>ssh-rsaxxx</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | If using NetBackup IT Analytics, uncomment this and provide the SSH public key. IT Analytics uses this to access the primary server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| kmsDBSecret: <b>kms-secret</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Secret name which contains the Host Master Key ID (HMKID), Host Master Key passphrase (HMKpassphrase), Key Protection Key ID (KPKID) and Key Protection Key passphrase (KPKpassphrase) for NetBackup Key Management Service. The secret should be 'Opaque', and can be created either using a YAML or the following example command: <code>kubectl create secret generic kms-secret --namespace nb-namespace --from-literal=HMKID="HMK@ID" --from-literal=HMKpassphrase="HMK@passphrase" --from-literal=KPKID="KPK@ID" --from-literal=KPKpassphrase="KPK@passphrase"</code> |
| (AKS specific) autoVolumeExpansion                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Enables automatic monitoring of the catalog volume when set to true. For more information, see Reducing catalog storage management.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>catalog:</p> <p>capacity: 100Gi</p> <p>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>standard</b></p> <p>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>&lt;EFS_ID&gt;</b></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | This storage applies to the primary server for the NetBackup catalog, log and data volumes. The primary server catalog volume must be at least 100 Gi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Table 3-4** Environment parameters for the primary server (*continued*)

| Paragraph                                                                                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| log:<br>capacity: <b>30Gi</b><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>standard</b><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</b>  | Log volume must be at least 30Gi.                                                                                                        |
| data:<br>capacity: <b>30Gi</b><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>standard</b><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <b>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</b> | The primary server data volume must be at least 30Gi.<br><b>Note:</b> (AKS-specific) This storage applies to primary server data volume. |

The following section describes the media server configurations. If you do not have a media server either remove this section from the configuration file entirely, or define it as an empty list.

---

**Note:** (EKS-specific) The environment name or media server name in `environment.yaml` file must always be less than 22 characters.

---

**Table 3-5** Media server related parameters

| Parameters                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mediaServers:<br>- name: media1 | This specifies media server configurations. This is given as a list of media servers, but most environments will have just one, with multiple replicas. It's also possible to have zero media servers; in that case, either remove the media servers section entirely, or define it as an empty list:<br>mediaServers: [] |
| minimumReplicas                 | Describes the minimum number of replicas of the running media server. This is an optional field. If not specified, the value will be set to the value specified for <b>replicas</b> field.                                                                                                                                |
| replicas: 1                     | Specifies the maximum number of replicas that the media server can scale up to.<br><br>The value of replicas must be greater than the value of <b>minimumReplicas</b> for media autoscaler to work.                                                                                                                       |

**Table 3-5** Media server related parameters (*continued*)

| Parameters                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tag: <i>10.3-special</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | To use a different image tag specifically for the media servers, uncomment this value and provide the desired tag. This overrides the tag specified above in the common table.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| nodeSelector:<br>labelKey: <i>kubernetes.io/os</i><br>labelValue: <i>linux</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Specify a key and value that identifies nodes where media-server pods will run.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This <b>labelKey</b> and <b>labelValue</b> must be the same label key:value pair used during cloud node creation which would be used as a toleration for media server.                                                                                  |
| data:<br>capacity: <i>50Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>managed-premium-nbux</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | This storage applies to the media server data volumes.<br><br>The minimum data size for a media server is 50 Gi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| log<br>capacity: <i>30Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>managed-premium-nbux</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | This storage applies to the media server log volumes.<br><br>Log volumes must be at least 30Gi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| networkLoadBalancer:<br>(AKS-specific) annotations: - service.beta.kubernetes.io/<br>azure-load-balancer -internal-subnet: <i>example-subnet</i><br>(EKS-specific) annotations:<br>-service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets:<br><i>example-subnet1 name</i><br>ipList:<br>ipAddr: <i>4.3.2.2</i><br>fqdn: <i>media1-1.example.com</i><br>ipAddr: <i>4.3.2.3</i><br>fqdn: <i>media1-2.example.com</i> | Uncomment annotations to specify additional media-server specific annotations. These values are merged with the values given in the loadBalancerAnnotations. The duplicate values given here, override the corresponding values in the loadBalancerAnnotations.<br><br>The number of entries in the IP list should match the replica count specified above. |

**(EKS-specific) Note the following:**

To use gp3 (EBS based storage class), user must specify provisioner for storage class as `ebs.csi.aws.com` and must install EBS CSI driver. For more information on installing the EBS CSI driver, see [Amazon EBS CSI driver](#). Example, for gp3 storage class:

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: gp3
  annotations:
    storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class: "true"
allowVolumeExpansion: true
provisioner: ebs.csi.aws.com
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
parameters:
  type: gp3
```

The following section describes MSDP-related parameters. You may also deploy without any MSDP scaleouts. In that case, remove the `msdpScaleouts` section entirely from the configuration file.

**Table 3-6** MSDP Scaleout related parameters

| Parameter                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>msdpScaleouts:</code><br>- <code>name: dedupe1</code> | This specifies MSDP Scaleout configurations. This is given as a list, but it would be rare to need more than one scaleout deployment in a single environment. Use the <code>replicas</code> property below to scale out. It's also possible to have zero MSDP scaleouts; in that case, either remove the <code>msdpScaleouts</code> section entirely, or define it to an empty list: <code>msdpScaleouts: []</code> |
| <code>tag: '18.0'</code>                                    | This tag overrides the one defined in the table 1-3. It is necessary because the MSDP Scaleout images are shipped with tags different from the NetBackup primary and media images.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>replicas: 4</code>                                    | This is the scaleout size of this MSDP Scaleout component. It is a required value, and it must be between 4 and 16 inclusive.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Scale-down of the MSDP Scaleout replicas after deployment is not supported.                                                                                                                                                                                       |

**Table 3-6** MSDP Scaleout related parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| serviceIPFQDNs:<br>ipAddr: 1.2.3.4<br>fqdn: dedupe1-1.example.com<br>ipAddr: 1.2.3.5<br>fqdn: dedupe1-2.example.com<br>ipAddr: 1.2.3.6<br>fqdn: dedupe1-3.example.com<br>ipAddr: 1.2.3.7<br>fqdn: dedupe1-4.example.com                                | These are the IP addresses and host names of the MSDP Scaleout servers. The number of the entries should match the number of the replicas specified above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| kms:<br>keyGroup: <i>example-key-group</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Specifies the initial key group and key secret to be used for KMS encryption. When reusing storage from a previous deployment, the key group and key secret may already exist. In this case, provide the keyGroup only.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| keySecret:<br><i>example-key-secret</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Specify keySecret only if the key group does not already exist and needs to be created. The secret type should be Opaque, and you can create the secret either using a YAML or the following command:<br><br><pre>kubectl create secret generic example-key-secret --namespace nb-namespace --from-literal=username="devuser" --from-literal=password="test password"</pre>                                              |
| ( <i>AKS-specific</i> ) loadBalancerAnnotations:<br>service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer-internal: <i>true</i><br><br>( <i>EKS-specific</i> ) loadBalancerAnnotations:<br>service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-internal: <i>true</i> | For MSDP scaleouts, the default value for the following annotation is `false`, which may cause the MSDP Scaleout services in this Environment to be accessible publicly:<br><br>( <i>AKS-specific</i> ): Azure-load-balancer-internal<br>( <i>EKS-specific</i> ): AWS-load-balancer-internal<br><br>Ensure that they use private IP addresses, specify `true` here or in the loadBalancerAnnotations above in Table 1-3. |



**Table 3-6** MSDP Scaleout related parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                                                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| credential:<br>secretName: <i>msdp-secret1</i>                                                                                          | This defines the credentials for the MSDP Scaleout server. It refers to a secret in the same namespace as this environment resource. Secret can be either of type 'Basic-auth' or 'Opaque'. You can create secrets using a YAML or by using the following command:<br><pre>kubectl create secret generic &lt;msdp-secret1&gt; --namespace &lt;nb-namespace&gt; --from-literal=username=&lt;"devuser"&gt; --from-literal=password=&lt;"Y@123abCdEf"&gt;</pre> |
| autoDelete: <i>false</i>                                                                                                                | Optional parameter. Default value is true. When set to true, the MSDP Scaleout operator deletes the MSDP secret after using it. In such case, the MSDP and primary secrets must be distinct. To use the same secret for both MSDP scaleouts and the primary server, set autoDelete to false.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| catalog:<br>capacity: <i>1Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>standard</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>gp2</i>     | This storage applies to MSDP Scaleout to store the catalog and metadata. The catalog size may only be increased for capacity expansion. Expanding the existing catalog volumes cause short downtime of the engines. Recommended size is 1/100 of backend data capacity.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| dataVolumes:<br>capacity: <i>5Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>standard</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>gp2</i> | This specifies the data storage for this MSDP Scaleout resource. You may increase the size of a volume or add more volumes to the end of the list, but do not remove or re-order volumes. Maximum 16 volumes are allowed. Appending new data volumes or expanding existing ones will cause short downtime of the Engines. Recommended volume size is 5Gi-32Ti.                                                                                               |
| log:<br>capacity: <i>20Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>standard</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>gp2</i>        | Specifies log volume size used to provision Persistent Volume Claim for Controller and MDS Pods. In most cases, 5-10 Gi capacity should be big enough for one MDS or Controller Pod to use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| nodeSelector:<br>labelKey: <i>kubernetes.io/os</i><br>labelValue: <i>linux</i>                                                          | Specify a key and value that identifies nodes where MSDP Scaleout pods will run.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Table 3-6** MSDP Scaleout related parameters (*continued*)

| Parameter                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (AKS-specific) s3Credential:<br>secretName: s3-secret1                  | <p>This is an optional parameter.</p> <p>Defines the MSDP S3 root credentials for the MSDP Scaleout server. It refers to a secret in the same namespace as this environment resource. If the parameter is not specified, MSDP S3 feature is unavailable.</p> <p>Run the following command to create the secret:</p> <pre>kubectl msdp generate-s3-secret --namespace &lt;nb-namespace&gt; --s3secret &lt;s3-secret1&gt;</pre> <p>Save the S3 credential at a secured place after it is generated for later use.</p> |
| (AKS-specific) autoDelete: false                                        | <p>This is an optional parameter.</p> <p>Default value is true. When set to true, the MSDP Scaleout operator deletes the MSDP S3 credential secret after using it.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| (AKS-specific) s3Ip:<br>ipAddr: 1.2.3.8<br>fqdn: dedupe1-s3.example.com | <p>These are optional parameters.</p> <p>The IP address and host name of the S3 load balancer service. If the parameter is not specified, MSDP S3 feature is unavailable.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

For more information on Snapshot Manager related parameters, refer to the following:

See [“Installing the docker images”](#) on page 128.

## Edit restricted parameters post deployment

Do not change these parameters post initial deployment. Changing these parameters may result in an inconsistent deployment.

**Table 3-7** Edit restricted parameters post deployment

| Parameter | Description                                                                           |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| name      | Specifies the prefix name for the primary, media, and MSDP Scaleout server resources. |

**Table 3-7** Edit restricted parameters post deployment (*continued*)

| Parameter                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(AKS-specific)</p> <p>ipAddr, fqdn and loadBalancerAnnotations</p> | <p>The values against ipAddr, fqdn and loadBalancerAnnotations against following fields should not be changed post initial deployment. This is applicable for primary, media, and MSDP Scaleout servers. For example:</p> <pre> - The loadBalancerAnnotations for loadBalancerAnnotations: service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer -internal-subnet: example-subnet service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer -internal: "true" The IP and FQDNs values defined for Primary, Media and MSDPScaleout ipList:   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.1    fqdn: primary.example.com ipList:   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.2    fqdn: medial-1.example.com   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.3    fqdn: medial-2.example.com serviceIPFQDNs:   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.4    fqdn: dedupe1-1.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.5    fqdn: dedupe1-2.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.6    fqdn: dedupe1-3.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.7    fqdn: dedupe1-4.example.com </pre> |
| <p>(EKS-specific)</p> <p>ipAddr, fqdn and loadBalancerAnnotations</p> | <p>The values against ipAddr, fqdn and loadBalancerAnnotations against following fields should not be changed post initial deployment. This is applicable for primary, media, and MSDP Scaleout servers. For example:</p> <pre> - The loadBalancerAnnotations for loadBalancerAnnotations: service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer -internal-subnet: example-subnet service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer -internal: "true" - The IP and FQDNs values defined for Primary, Media and MSDPScaleout ipList:   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.1    fqdn: primary.example.com ipList:   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.2    fqdn: medial-1.example.com   - ipAddr: 4.3.2.3    fqdn: medial-2.example.com serviceIPFQDNs:   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.4    fqdn: dedupe1-1.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.5    fqdn: dedupe1-2.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.6    fqdn: dedupe1-3.example.com   - ipAddr: 1.2.3.7    fqdn: dedupe1-4.example.com </pre>   |

**Table 3-8** Snapshot Manager server related parameters

| parameters                                                                                                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cpServer:<br>- name: cpServer-name                                                                                                                                    | This specifies Snapshot Manager server configurations. This is given as a list of Snapshot Manager servers, but most environments will have just one, with multiple replicas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| tag: <i>10.3-special</i>                                                                                                                                              | This tag overrides the one defined in Common environment parameters table above. The Snapshot Manager images are shipped with tags different from the NetBackup primary, media, and MSDP images.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| nodeSelector:<br>controlPlane: <i>cpcontrol</i><br>dataPlane: <i>cpdata</i>                                                                                           | Details of the label to be used for identification of Kubernetes nodes reserved for the Snapshot Manager Servers.<br><br>If controlPlane is not specified here it will read it from <i>primary.nodeSelector</i> . In that case the nodepool should have appropriate taint and label added to it.[the nodepool name mentioned will have value of <i>primary.nodeSelector.labelValue</i> ]<br><br><b>Note:</b> The nodepool name mentioned will have value of <i>primary.nodeSelector.labelValue</i> . |
| data:<br>capacity: <i>100Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>managed-premium</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</i> | This storage applies to the Snapshot Manager server data volumes.<br><br>The minimum data size for a Snapshot Manager server is 100 Gi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| log<br>capacity: <i>5Gi</i><br>(AKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>managed-premium</i><br>(EKS-specific) storageClassName: <i>&lt;EBS based storage class&gt;</i>     | This storage applies to the Snapshot Manager server log volumes.<br><br>Log volumes must be at least 5 Gi.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

**Table 3-8** Snapshot Manager server related parameters (*continued*)

| parameters                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>networkLoadBalancer:</p> <p>(AKS-specific) annotations: - service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer-internal-subnet: <i>example-subnet</i></p> <p>(EKS-specific) annotations: -service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: <i>example-subnet1 name</i></p> <p>ipList:</p> <p>ipAddr: 4.3.2.2</p> <p>fqdn: <i>media1-1.example.com</i></p> <p>ipAddr: 4.3.2.3</p> <p>cpServer: <i>media1-2.example.com</i></p> | <p>Snapshot ManagerUncomment annotations to specify additional -server specific annotations. These values are merged with the values given in the spec.loadBalancerAnnotations. The duplicate values given here, override the corresponding values in the spec.loadBalancerAnnotations.</p> |

**Note the following:**

To use efs-sc (EFS based storage class), user must specify provisioner for storage class as `efs.csi.aws.com` and must install EFS CSI driver. For example:

```
Storage class:

kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: efs-sc
provisioner: efs.csi.aws.com
parameters:
  provisioningMode: efs-ap
  fileSystemId: <EFS ID>
  directoryPerms: "700"
reclaimPolicy: Retain
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
```

# Uninstalling NetBackup environment and the operators

You can uninstall the NetBackup primary, media, and MSDP Scaleout environment and the operators as required. You need to uninstall the NetBackup environment before you uninstall the operators.

---

**Note:** Replace the environment custom resource names as per your configuration in the steps below.

---

### To uninstall the NetBackup environment

- 1** To remove the environment components from the application namespace, run:

```
$ kubectl delete
environment.netbackup.veritas.com/environment-sample --namespace
<namespce_name>
```

- 2** Wait for all the pods, services and resources to be terminated. To confirm, run

```
$ kubectl get --namespace <namespce_name>
all,environments,primaryservers,mediaservers,msdpyscaleouts
```

You should get a message that no resources were found in the *nb-example* namespace.

- 3** To identify and delete any outstanding persistent volume claims, run the following:

```
$ kubectl get pvc --namespace <namespce_name>
$ kubectl delete pvc <pvc-name>
```

To delete all PVCs under the same namespace, run the following command:

```
kubectl delete pvc -n <namespace> --all
```

- 4** To locate and delete any persistent volumes created by the deployment, run:

```
$ kubectl get pv
$ kubectl delete pv <pv-name> --grace-period=0 --force
```

---

**Note:** Certain storage drivers may cause physical volumes to get stuck in the terminating state. To resolve this issue, remove the finalizer, using the command: `$ kubectl patch pv <pv-name> -p '{"metadata":{"finalizers":null}}'`

---

---

**Note:** (*EKS-specific*) Navigate to mounted EFS directory and delete the content from `primary_catalog` folder by running the `rm -rf /efs/` command.

---

- 5** To delete the application namespace, run:

```
$ kubectl delete ns <namespace name>
```

### To uninstall the operators

- 1 To uninstall the NetBackup operator run the following command from the installation directory.

```
$ kubectl delete -k operator
```

- 2 To uninstall the MSDP Scaleout operator and remove the operator's namespace, run.

```
$ kubectl-msdp delete --namespace <namespace name>
```

---

**Note:** Do not remove the MSDP Scaleout operator first as it may corrupt the NetBackup operator.

---

### To uninstall NetBackup operator and Snapshot Manager

- ◆ To uninstall the NetBackup operator and Snapshot Manager operator and remove the operator's namespace, run the following command:

```
$ kubectl delete -k operator
```

For more information on uninstalling the Snapshot Manager, refer to the following section:

See [“Uninstalling Snapshot Manager from Kubernetes cluster”](#) on page 242.

## Applying security patches

This section describes how to apply security patches for operator and application images.

In the instructions below, we assume that the operators were deployed to the *netbackup-operator-system* namespace (the default namespace suggested by the deployment script), and that an environment resource named *nb-env* was deployed to a namespace named *nb-example*.

Although it is not necessary to manually shut down NetBackup primary server or media servers, it's still a good idea to quiesce scheduling so that no jobs get interrupted while pods are taken down and restarted.

## Prepare the images

### To prepare the images to apply patches

- 1 Unpack the tar file on a system where docker is able to push to the container registry, and `kubectl` can access the cluster.
- 2 Decide on a unique tag value to use for MSDP Scaleout images. The unique tag should be in `version-postfix` format, For example, 18.0-update1. Set the **DD\_TAG** environment variable accordingly and run `deploy.sh`:

```
DD_TAG=18.0-update1 ./deploy.sh
```

- 3 In the menu that appears, select option **1** to install the operators.
- 4 Enter the fully qualified domain name of the container registry.

For example:

*(AKS-specific) exampleacr.azurecr.io*

*(EKS-specific) example.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/*

When the script prompts to load images, answer *yes*.

- 5 When the script prompts to tag and push images, wait. Open another terminal window and re-tag the MSDP Scaleout images as:

```
docker tag msdp-operator:18.0 msdp-operator:18.0-update1
```

```
docker tag uss-controller:18.0 uss-controller:18.0-update1
```

```
docker tag uss-engine:18.0 uss-engine:18.0-update1
```

```
docker tag uss-mds:18.0 uss-mds:18.0-update1
```

- 6 Return to the deploy script and when prompted, enter *yes* to tag and push the images. Wait for the images to be pushed, and then the script will pause to ask another question. The remaining questions are not required, so press `Ctrl+c` to exit the deploy script.



## Update the NetBackup operator

- 1 Get the image ID of the existing NetBackup operator container and record it for later. Run:

```
kubectl get pod -n netbackup-operator-system -l
nb-control-plane=nb-controller-manager -o jsonpath --template
"{.items[*].status.containerStatuses[?(@.name=='netbackup-operator')].imageID}{'\n'}"
```

The command prints the name of the image and includes the SHA-256 hash identifying the image. For example:

(AKS-specific) `exampleacr.azurecr.io/netbackup/operator`

`@sha256:59d4d46d82024a1ab6353`

`33774c8e19eb5691f3fe988d86ae16a0c5fb636e30c`

(EKS-specific) `example.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/`

- 2 To restart the NetBackup operator, run:

```
pod=$(kubectl get pod -n netbackup-operator-system -l
nb-control-plane=nb-controller-manager -o jsonpath --template
'"{.items[*].metadata.name}"')
```

```
kubectl delete pod -n netbackup-operator-system $pod
```

- 3 Re-run the `kubectl` command from earlier to get the image ID of the NetBackup operator. Confirm that it's different from what it was before the update.

## Update the MSDP Scaleout operator

- 1 Get the image ID of the existing MSDP Scaleout operator container and save it for later use. Run:

```
kubectl get pods -n netbackup-operator-system -l
control-plane=controller-manager -o jsonpath --template
"{.items[*].status.containerStatuses[?(@.name=='manager')].imageID}{'\n'}"
```

- 2 Re-initialize the MSDP Scaleout operator using the new image.

(AKS-specific) `kubectl msdp init -n netbackup-operator-system --image exampleacr.azurecr.io/msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version>-update1 --storageclass managed-csi-hdd`

(EKS-specific) `kubectl msdp init -n netbackup-operator-system --image <accountid>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/<registry>:<tag>/msdp-operator:<msdpCluster_version>-update1 --storageclass managed-csi-hdd`

- 3 Re-run the `kubectl` command from earlier to get the image ID of the MSDP Scaleout operator. Confirm that it's different from what it was before the update.

## Update the primary server or media servers

- 1 Look at the list of pods in the application namespace and identify the pod or pods to update. The primary-server pod's name typically end with "primary-0" and media-server pods end with "media-0", "media-1", etc. Hereafter, pod will be referred to as \$pod. Run:

```
kubectl get pods -n nb-example
```

- 2 Get the image ID of the existing NetBackup container and record it for later. Run:

```
kubectl get pods -n nb-example $pod -o jsonpath --template  
"{.status.containerStatuses[*].imageID}{'\n'}"
```

- 3 Look at the list of StatefulSets in the application namespace and identify the one that corresponds to the pod or pods to be updated. The name is typically the same as the pod, but without the number at the end. For example, a pod named nb-primary-0 is associated with statefulset nb-primary. Hereafter the statefulset will be referred to as \$set. Run:

```
kubectl get statefulsets -n nb-example
```

- 4 Restart the statefulset. Run:

```
kubectl rollout restart -n nb-example statefulset $set
```

The pod or pods associated with the statefulset are terminated and be re-created. It may take several minutes to reach the "Running" state.

- 5 Once the pods are running, re-run the kubectl command from step 2 to get the image ID of the new NetBackup container. Confirm that it's different from what it was before the update.

## Update the MSDP Scaleout containers

- 1 Look at the list of pods in the application namespace and identify the pods to update. The controller pod have "uss-controller" in its name, the MDS pods have "uss-mds" in their names, and the engine pods are be named like their fully qualified domain names. Run:

```
kubectl get pods -n nb-example
```

- 2 Get the image IDs of the existing MSDP Scaleout containers and record them for later. All the MDS pods use the same image, and all the engine pods use the same image, so it's only necessary to get three image IDs, one for each type of pod.

```
kubectl get pods -n nb-example $engine $controller $mds -o  
jsonpath --template "{range  
.items[*]}{.status.containerStatuses[*].imageID}{'\n'}{end}"
```

- 3 Edit the Environment resource and change the *spec.msdpScaleouts[\*].tag* values to the new tag used earlier in these instructions.

```
kubectl edit environment -n nb-example nb-env

...
spec:
  ...
  msdpScaleouts:
  - ...
    tag: "18.0-update1"
```

- 4 Save the file and close the editor. The MSDP Scaleout pods are terminated and re-created. It may take several minutes for all the pods to reach the "Running" state.
- 5 Run `kubectl get pods`, to check the list of pods and note the new name of the `uss-controller` pod. Then, once the pods are all ready, re-run the `kubectl` command above to get the image IDs of the new MSDP Scaleout containers. Confirm that they're different from what they were before the update.

# Deploying NetBackup

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster](#)
- [Recommendations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster](#)
- [Limitations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster](#)
- [Primary and media server CR](#)
- [Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment](#)
- [Managing NetBackup deployment using VxUpdate](#)
- [Migrating the cloud node for primary or media servers](#)

## Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before proceeding with the deployment for AKS/EKS.

### AKS-specific requirements

Use the following checklist to prepare the AKS for installation.

- Your Azure Kubernetes cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.  
Supported Kubernetes cluster version is between 1.21.x and 1.24.x.
- While creating the cluster, assign appropriate roles and permissions.  
Refer to the 'Concepts - Access and identity in Azure Kubernetes Services (AKS)' section in *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.

- Use an existing Azure container registry or create a new one. Your Kubernetes cluster must be able to access this registry to pull the images from the container registry. For more information on the Azure container registry, see 'Azure Container Registry documentation' section in *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.
- Deploying the Primary and Media server installation on the same node pool (node) is possible. For optimal performance, it is recommended to create separate node pools. Select the **Scale method** as **Autoscale**. The autoscaling feature allows your node pool to scale dynamically by provisioning and de-provisioning the nodes as required automatically.
- A dedicated node pool for Primary server must be created in Azure Kubernetes cluster.

The following table lists the node configuration for the primary and media servers.

|                                |                  |          |
|--------------------------------|------------------|----------|
| Node type                      |                  | D16ds v4 |
| Disk type                      |                  | P30      |
| vCPU                           |                  | 16       |
| RAM                            |                  | 64 GiB   |
| Total disk size per node (TiB) |                  | 1 TB     |
| Number of disks/node           |                  | 1        |
| Cluster storage size           | Small (4 nodes)  | 4 TB     |
|                                | Medium (8 nodes) | 8 TB     |
|                                | Large (16 nodes) | 16 TB    |

- Another dedicated node pool must be created for Snapshot Manager (if it has to be deployed) with auto scaling enabled.  
Following is the minimum configuration required for Snapshot Manager data plane node pool:

|                       |                                                                  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Node type             | B4ms                                                             |
| RAM                   | 8 GB                                                             |
| Number of nodes       | Minimum 1 with auto scaling enabled.                             |
| Maximum pods per node | 6 (system) + 4 (static pods) + RAM*2 (dynamic) = 26 pods or more |

Following are the different scenario's on how the NetBackup Snapshot Manager calculates the number of job which can run at a given point in time, based on the above mentioned formula:

- For 2 CPU's and 8 GB RAM node configuration:

|                       |                                                                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CPU                   | More than 2 CPU's                                                   |
| RAM                   | 8 GB                                                                |
| Maximum pods per node | 6 (system) + 4 (static pods) + 8*2 = 16 (dynamic pods) = 26 or more |
| Autoscaling enabled   | Minimum number =1 and Maximum = 3                                   |

---

**Note:** Above configuration will run 8 jobs per node at once.

---

- For 2/4/6 CPU's and 16 GB RAM node configuration:

|                       |                                                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CPU                   | More than 2/4/6 CPU's                                              |
| RAM                   | 16 GB                                                              |
| Maximum pods per node | 6 (system) + 4 (Static pods) + 16*2=32 (Dynamic pods) = 42 or more |
| Autoscaling enabled   | Minimum number =1 and Maximum = 3                                  |

---

**Note:** Above configuration will run 16 jobs per node at once.

---

- All the nodes in the node pool must be running the Linux operating system.
- Taints and tolerations allows you to mark (taint) a node so that no pods can schedule onto it unless a pod explicitly *tolerates* the taint. Marking nodes instead of pods (as in node affinity/anti-affinity) is particularly useful for situations where most pods in the cluster must avoid scheduling onto the node.  
Taints are set on the node pool while creating the node pool in the cluster.  
Tolerations are set on the pods.  
To use this functionality, user must create the node pool with the following detail:
  - Add a label with certain key value. For example `key = nbpool, value = nbnodes`

- Add a taint with the same key and value which is used for label in above step with effect as *NoSchedule*.

For example, key = nbpool, value = nbnodes, effect = NoSchedule

Provide these details in the operator yaml as follows. To update the toleration and node selector for operator pod,

Edit the `operator/patch/operator_patch.yaml` file. Provide the same label key:value in node selector section and in toleration sections. For example,

```
nodeSelector:
  nbpool: nbnodes
  # Support node taints by adding pod tolerations equal to the specified nodeSelectors
  # For Toleration NODE_SELECTOR_KEY used as a key and NODE_SELECTOR_VALUE as a value.
tolerations:
  - key: nbpool
    operator: "Equal"
    value: nbnodes
```

Update the same label key:value as labelKey and labelValue in nodeSelector section in `environment.yaml` file.

- If you want to use static public IPs, private IPs and fully qualified domain names for the load balancer service, the public IP addresses, private IP addresses and FQDNs must be created in AKS before deployment.
- If you want to bind the load balancer service IPs to a specific subnet, the subnet must be created in AKS and its name must be updated in the **annotations** key in the **networkLoadBalancer** section of the custom resource (CR).  
For more information on the network configuration for a load balancer service, refer to the *How-to-Guide* section of the *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.  
For more information on managing the load balancer service, See [“About the Load Balancer service”](#) on page 165.

- Create a storage class with Azure file storage type with `file.csi.azure.com` and allows volume expansion. It must be in LRS category with Premium SSD. It is recommended that the storage class has `Retain` reclaim. Such storage class can be used for primary server as it supports `Azure premium files` storage only for catalog volume.

For more information on Azure premium files, see 'Azure Files CSI driver' section of *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.

For example,

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
```

```

    name: {{ custome-storage-class-name }}
provisioner: file.csi.azure.com
reclaimPolicy: Retain
allowVolumeExpansion: true
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
parameters:
  storageaccounttype: Premium_LRS
  protocol: nfs

```

- Create a storage class with `Managed disc` storage type with `allowVolumeExpansion = true` and `ReclaimPolicy=Retain`. This storage class will be used for Primary server data and log volume. Media server storage details support azure disks only.
- Customer's Azure subscription should have **Network Contributor** role. For more information, see 'Azure built-in roles' section of *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.

## EKS-specific requirements

- 1 Create a Kubernetes cluster with the following guidelines:

- Use Kubernetes version 1.21 onwards.
- AWS default CNI is used during cluster creation.
- Create a nodegroup with only one availability zone and instance type should be of at least **m5.4xlarge** configuration and select the size of attached EBS volume for each node more than 100 GB.  
The nodepool uses AWS manual or autoscaling group feature which allows your nodepool to scale by provisioning and de-provisioning the nodes as required automatically.

---

**Note:** All the nodes in node group must be running on the Linux operating system.

---

- Minimum required policies in IAM role:
  - AmazonEKSClusterPolicy
  - AmazonEKSWorkerNodePolicy
  - AmazonEC2ContainerRegistryReadOnly
  - AmazonEKS\_CNI\_Policy



- AmazonEKSServicePolicy
- 2 Use an existing AWS Elastic Container Registry or create a new one and ensure that the EKS has full access to pull images from the elastic container registry.
  - 3 It is recommended to create separate node pool for Media server installation with autoscaler add-on installed in the cluster. The autoscaling feature allows your node pool to scale dynamically by provisioning and de-provisioning the nodes as required automatically.
  - 4 A dedicated node pool for Primary server must be created in Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services cluster.

The following table lists the node configuration for the primary and media servers.

|                                |                  |            |
|--------------------------------|------------------|------------|
| Node type                      |                  | m5.4xlarge |
| vCPU                           |                  | 16         |
| RAM                            |                  | 64 GiB     |
| Total disk size per node (TiB) |                  | 1 TB       |
| Number of disks/node           |                  | 1          |
| Cluster storage size           | Small (4 nodes)  | 4 TB       |
|                                | Medium (8 nodes) | 8 TB       |
|                                | Large (16 nodes) | 16 TB      |

- 5 Another dedicated node pool must be created for Snapshot Manager (if it has to be deployed) with auto scaling enabled.

Following is the minimum configuration required for Snapshot Manager data plane node pool:

|                 |  |                                      |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Node type       |  | t3.large                             |
| RAM             |  | 8 GB                                 |
| Number of nodes |  | Minimum 1 with auto scaling enabled. |

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum pods per node | <p>Number of IPs required for Snapshot Manager data pool, must be greater than:</p> <p>the number of nodes (for node's own IP) + (RAM size per node * 2 * number of nodes) + (number of all kube-system pods running on all nodes) + static listener pod + number of nodes( for fluent daemonset)</p> <p>Number of IPs required for Snapshot Manager control pool, must be greater than:</p> <p>number of nodes (for node's own IP) + number of flexsnap pods(15) + number of flexsnap services (6) + nginx load balancer IP + no. of additional off host agents + operator + (number of all kube-system pods running on all nodes)</p> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Following are the different scenario's on how the NetBackup Snapshot Manager calculates the number of job which can run at a given point in time, based on the above mentioned formula:

- For 2 CPU's and 8 GB RAM node configuration:

|     |                   |
|-----|-------------------|
| CPU | More than 2 CPU's |
| RAM | 8 GB              |

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum pods per node | <p>Number of IPs required for Snapshot Manager data pool, must be greater than:</p> <p>number of nodes (for node's own IP) + (RAM size per node * 2 * number of nodes) + (number of all kube-system pods running on all nodes) + static listener pod + number of nodes( for fluent daemonset)</p> <p>Number of IPs required for Snapshot Manager control pool, must be greater than:</p> <p>number of nodes (for node's own IP) + number of flexsnap pods(15) + number of flexsnap services (6) + nginx load balancer IP + no. of additional off host agents + operator + (number of all kube-system pods running on all nodes)</p> |
| Autoscaling enabled   | Minimum number =1 and Maximum = 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

---

**Note:** Above configuration will run 8 jobs per node at once.

---

- For 2/4/6 CPU's and 16 GB RAM node configuration:

|                       |                                                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CPU                   | More than 2/4/6 CPU's                                              |
| RAM                   | 16 GB                                                              |
| Maximum pods per node | 6 (system) + 4 (Static pods) + 16*2=32 (Dynamic pods) = 42 or more |
| Autoscaling enabled   | Minimum number =1 and Maximum = 3                                  |

---

**Note:** Above configuration will run 16 jobs per node at once.

---

- 6 Taints and tolerations allows you to mark (taint) a node so that no pods can schedule onto it unless a pod explicitly *tolerates* the taint. Marking nodes instead of pods (as in node affinity/anti-affinity) is particularly useful for situations where most pods in the cluster must avoid scheduling onto the node.

Taints are set on the node group while creating the node group in the cluster. Tolerations are set on the pods.

To use this functionality, user must create the node group with the following detail:

- Add a label with certain key value. For example `key = nbpool, value = nbnodes`
- Add a taint with the same key and value which is used for label in above step with effect as *NoSchedule*.  
For example, `key = nbpool, value = nbnodes, effect = NoSchedule`  
Provide these details in the operator yaml as follows. To update the toleration and node selector for operator pod,  
Edit the `operator/patch/operator_patch.yaml` file. Provide the same label `key:value` in node selector section and in toleration sections. For example,

```
nodeSelector:
  nbpool: nbnodes
  # Support node taints by adding pod tolerations equal to the specified nodeSelectors
  # For Toleartion NODE_SELECTOR_KEY used as a key and NODE_SELECTOR_VALUE as a value.
tolerations:
  - key: nbpool
    operator: "Equal"
    value: nbnodes
```

Update the same label `key:value` as `labelKey` and `labelValue` in `nodeselector` section in `environment.yaml` file.

- 7 Deploy aws load balancer controller add-on in the cluster.

For more information on installing the add-on, see 'Installing the AWS Load Balancer Controller add-on' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- 8 Install cert-manager by using the following command:

```
$ kubectl apply -f
https://github.com/cert-manager/cert-manager/releases/download/v1.8.0/cert-manager.yaml
```

For more information, see *Documentation for cert-manager installation*.

- 9 The FQDN that will be provided in primary server CR and media server CR specifications in networkLoadBalancer section must be DNS resolvable to the provided IP address.

- 10 Amazon Elastic File System (Amazon EFS) for shared persistence storage. To create EFS for primary server, see 'Create your Amazon EFS file system' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

EFS configuration can be as follow and user can update Throughput mode as required:

Performance mode: General Purpose

Throughput mode: Bursting (256 MiB/s)

Availability zone: Regional

---

**Note:** Throughput mode can be increased at runtime depending on the size of workloads and also if you are seeing performance issue you can increase the Throughput mode till 1024 MiB/s.

---



---

**Note:** To install the add-on in the cluster, ensure that you install the Amazon EFS CSI driver. For more information on installing the Amazon EFS CSI driver, see 'Amazon EFS CSI driver' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

---

- 11 If NetBackup client is outside VPC or if you want to access the WEB UI from outside VPC then NetBackup client CIDR must be added with all NetBackup ports in security group inbound rule of cluster. See [“About the Load Balancer service”](#) on page 165. for more information on NetBackup ports.

- To obtain the cluster security group, run the following command:

```
aws eks describe-cluster --name <my-cluster> --query
cluster.resourcesVpcConfig.clusterSecurityGroupId
```

- The following link helps to add inbound rule to the security group: 'Add rules to a security group' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- 12** Create a storage class with EBS storage type with `allowVolumeExpansion = true` and `ReclaimPolicy=Retain`. This storage class is to be used for data and log for both primary and media servers.

For example,

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  annotations:
    storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class: "true"
  name: ebs-csi-storage-class
parameters:
  fsType: ext4
  type: gp2
provisioner: kubernetes.io/ebs.csi.aws.com
reclaimPolicy: Retain
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
allowVolumeExpansion: true
```

---

**Note:** Ensure that you install the Amazon EBS CSI driver to install the add-on in the cluster. For more information on installing the Amazon EBS CSI driver, see 'Managing the Amazon EBS CSI driver as an Amazon EKS add-on' and 'Amazon EBS CSI driver' sections of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

---

- 13** The EFS based PV must be specified for Primary server catalog volume with `ReclaimPolicy=Retain`.

## Host-specific requirements

Use the following checklist to address the prerequisites on the system that you want to use as a NetBackup host that connects to the AKS/EKS cluster.

### AKS-specific

- Linux operating system: For a complete list of compatible Linux operating systems, refer to the Software Compatibility List (SCL) at: [NetBackup Compatibility List for all Versions](#)
- Install Docker on the host to install NetBackup container images through tar, and start the container service. [Install Docker Engine](#)
- Prepare the host to manage the AKS cluster.
  - Install Azure CLI.

For more information, see 'Install the Azure CLI on Linux' section of the *Microsoft Azure Documentation*.

- Install Kubernetes CLI  
For more information, see 'Install and Set Up kubectl on Linux' section of the *Kubernetes Documentation*.
- Log in to the Azure environment to access the Kubernetes cluster by running this command on Azure CLI:
 

```
# az login -identity
# az account set --subscription <subscriptionID>
# az aks get-credentials --resource-group
<resource_group_name> --name <cluster_name>
```
- Log in to the container registry:
 

```
# az acr login -n <container-registry-name>
```

### EKS-specific

- Install AWS CLI.  
For more information on installing the AWS CLI, see 'Install or update the latest version of the AWS CLI' section of the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.
- Install Kubectl CLI.  
For more information on installing the Kubectl CLI, see 'Installing kubectl' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.
- Configure docker to enable the push of the container images to the container registry.
- Create the OIDC provider for the AWS EKS cluster.  
For more information on creating the OIDC provider, see 'Create an IAM OIDC provider for your cluster' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.
- Create an IAM service account for the AWS EKS cluster.  
For more information on creating an IAM service account, see 'Configuring a Kubernetes service account to assume an IAM role' section of the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.
- If an IAM role needs an access to the EKS cluster, run the following command from the system that already has access to the EKS cluster:
 

```
kubectl edit -n kube-system configmap/aws-auth
```

 For more information on creating an IAM role, see [Enabling IAM user and role access to your cluster](#).
- Login to the AWS environment to access the Kubernetes cluster by running the following command on AWS CLI:

```
aws eks --region <region_name> update-kubeconfig --name
<cluster_name>
```

- Free space of approximately 13GB on the location where you copy and extract the product installation TAR package file. If using docker locally, there should be approximately 8GB available on the `/var/lib/docker` location so that the images can be loaded to the docker cache, before being pushed to the container registry.
- AWS EFS-CSI driver should be installed for static PV/PVC creation of primary catalog volume.

## Recommendations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster

Note the following recommendations:

- Do not delete the disk linked to PV used in primary server and media server CR deployment. This may lead to data loss.
- Ensure that in one cluster, only one NetBackup operator instance is running.
- Do not edit any Kubernetes resource created as part of primary server and media server custom resource. Update is supported through custom resource update only.
- Detailed primary server custom resource deployment and media server custom resource deployment logs are retrieved from NetBackup operator pod logs using the `kubectl logs <netbackup-operator-pod-name> -c netbackup-operator -n <netbackup operator-namespace> command`.
- Deploy primary server custom resource and media server custom resource in same namespace.
- Ensure that you follow the symbolic link and edit the actual persisted version of the file, if you want to edit a file having a symbolic link in the primary server or media server.
- Specify different block storage based volume to obtain good performance when the `nbdeployutil` utility does not perform well on the following respective storage types based volumes:
  - (AKS-specific): Azure premium files
  - (EKS-specific): Amazon elastic files
- Duplication job configuration recommendation:
 

While configuring destination storage unit, manually select media servers that are always up, running and would never scale in (by the media server autoscaler).



Number of media servers that are always up and running would be same as that of the value mentioned in **minimumReplicas** field in CR.

When upgrading from older version of NetBackup 10.3, post upgrade ensure that you manually select media servers mentioned in **minimumReplicas** field in CR. If the value of **minimumReplicas** is not specified, the value will be set to the default value of 1.

- Adjust the value of **minimumReplicas** field based on the backup environment and requirements.
- **(AKS-specific)**
  - Use Azure Premium storage for data volume in media server CR.
  - Use Azure Standard storage for log volume in media server CR.
  - For primary server catalog volume, use `Azure premium files` as storage type and for media server volumes, use `managed-disk` as storage type.
  - In case of upgrade and during migration, do not delete the `Azure premium files/Azure disk volume` linked to the old PV which is used in primary server CR deployment until the migration is completed successfully. Else this leads to data loss.
  - Do not skip the Config-Checker utility execution during NetBackup upgrade or data migration.

**(EKS-specific)**

- Use AWS Premium storage for data volume in media server CR.
- Use AWS Standard storage for log volume in media server CR.
- For primary server volume (catalog), use `Amazon EFS` as storage type. For media server, primary server volumes, log and data volumes use `Amazon EBS` as storage type.
- In case of upgrade and during migration, do not delete the `Amazon elastic files` linked to the old PV which is used in primary server CR deployment until the migration is completed successfully. Else this leads to data loss.

## Limitations of NetBackup deployment on Kubernetes cluster

Note the following limitations:

- External Certificate Authority (ECA) is not supported.

- In case of load balancer service updating the CR with dynamic IP address to static IP address and vice versa is not allowed.
- Media server pods as NetBackup storage targets are not supported. For example, NetBackup storage targets like AdvancedDisk and so on are not supported on the media server pods.
- NetBackup Access Control (NBAC) and Enhanced Auditing (EA) configuration are not supported.

### **AKS-specific**

- As per [Microsoft](#), since the NFS file share is in Premium account, the minimum file share size is 100GB. If you create a PVC with a small storage size, the following error message is displayed:  

```
"failed to create file share ... size (5)..."
```
- The IP displayed is of POD IP. NetBackup installing on container takes the IP address of POD as configured IP. Even logs would have POD IP reference at many places.
- *(Applicable only for media servers)* A storage class that has the storage type as `Azure file` is not supported. When the Config-Checker runs the validation for checking the storage type, the Config-Checker job fails if it detects the storage type as `Azure file`. But if the Config-Checker is skipped then this validation is not run, and there can be issues in the deployment. There is no workaround available for this limitation. You must clean up the PVCs and CRs and reapply the CRs.
- Only `NFS` is supported as the protocol while performing data migration with `Azure premium files`.

### **EKS-specific**

- *(Applicable only for media servers)* A storage class that has the storage type as `EFS` is not supported. When the Config-Checker runs the validation for checking the storage type, the Config-Checker job fails if it detects the storage type as `EFS`. But if the Config-Checker is skipped then this validation is not run, and there can be issues in the deployment. There is no workaround available for this limitation. You must clean up the PVCs and CRs and reapply the CRs.

## Primary and media server CR

This section provides details of the primary and media server CR's.

## About primary server CR and media server CR

Primary server custom resource is used to deploy the NetBackup primary server and media server custom resource is used to deploy the NetBackup media server.

- After the operator is installed, update the custom resource YAMLs to deploy the primary server and media server CRs located in the `samples` folder.
- The primary server CRD and media server CRD are located in `operator_deployment.yaml` in the operator folder where the package is extracted.
- **Name** used in the primary server and media server CRs must not be same. In the primary server CR the **Name** should not contain the word **media** and in the media server CR the **Name** should not contain the word **primary**.

---

**Note:** After deployment, you cannot change the **Name** in primary server and media server CR.

---

- Before the CRs can be deployed, the utility called `Config-Checker` is executed that performs checks on the environment to ensure that it meets the basic deployment requirements. The config-check is done according to the **configCheckMode** and **paused** values provided in the custom resource YAML. See [“How does the Config-Checker utility work”](#) on page 25.
- You can deploy the primary server and media server CRs in same namespace.
- *(AKS-specific)* Use the storage class that has the storage type as `Azure premium files` for the catalog volumes in the primary server CR, and the storage type as `Azure disk` for the data and log volumes in the media server CR and primary server CR.  
*(EKS-specific)* Use the storage class that has the storage type as `Amazon elastic files` for the catalog volume in the primary server CR. For data and log volumes in the media server use the storage type as `EBS`.
- During fresh installation of the NetBackup servers, the value for **keep logs up to** under **log retention configuration** is set based on the log storage capacity provided in the primary server CR inputs. You may change this value if required. To update logs retention configuration, refer the steps mentioned in [NetBackup™ Logging Reference Guide](#).
- The NetBackup deployment sets the value as per the formula.  
$$\text{Size of logs PVC/PV} * 0.8 = \text{Keep logs up value}$$
By default, the default value is set to 24GB.

For example: If the user configures the storage size in the CR as 40GB (instead of the default 30GB) then the default value for that option become 32GB automatically based on the formula.

---

**Note:** This value will get automatically updated to the value of `bp.conf` file on volume expansion.

---

- Deployment details of primary server and media server can be observed from the operator pod logs using the following command:

```
kubectrl logs <operator-pod-name> -c netbackup-operator -n  
<operator-namespace>
```

## After installing primary server CR

Note the following points:

- *(AKS-specific)* The primary server CR will create a pod, a statefulset, a load balancer service, a configmap, a persistent volume claim for log volume, and a persistent volume claim for catalog volume.

*(EKS-specific)* The primary server CR will create a pod, a statefulset, a load balancer service, a configmap and PVCs.

- Initially pod will be in not ready state (0/1) when installation is going on in the background. Check the pod logs for installation progress using the following command:

```
kubectrl logs <primary-pod-name> -n <namespace>
```

Primary server can be considered as successfully installed and running when the primary server pod's state is **ready (1/1)** and the Statefulset is **ready (1/1)**.

- You can access the NetBackup webUI using the **primary server hostname** that was specified in the primary server CR status in **Primary server details** section.

For example, if the primary server hostname is **nbu-primary**, then you can access the webUI at <https://nbu-primary/webui/login>.

## After Installing the media server CR

Note the following points:

- The media server CR will create a pod, a statefulset, a configmap, a loadbalancer service, a persistent volume claim for data volume, and a persistent volume claim for log volume.

- Initially pod will be in not ready state (0/1) when installation is going in the background. Check the pod logs for installation progress using the following command:  

```
kubect1 logs <media-pod-name> -n <namespace>
```

Media server can be considered as successfully installed and running when the media server pod's state is **ready (1/1)**, and the Statefulset is **ready (1/1)**, for each replica count.
- Details of media server name for each replica can be obtained from media server CR status by running the following command:  

```
kubect1 describe <MediaServer_cr_name> -n <namespace>
```

## Elastic media server

All the replicas for the media server are always up and running which incurs unnecessary cost to customers. The basic media server pod power management (Elastic media server) feature provides Auto scaling of media server replicas based on the CPU and memory usage to reduce the cost.

### Enabling/disabling the auto scaling feature

For enabling/disabling the auto scaling feature, following media server CR inputs are required:

- **replicas**: Describes the maximum number of replicas that the media server can scale up to.
- **minimumReplicas**: Describes the minimum number of replicas of the media server running. This is an optional field. If not specified, the value for **minimumReplicas** field will be set to the default value of 1.

To enable the elasticity of media server, the value of **replicas** must be more than value of **minimumReplicas**.

To disable the autoscaling feature of media server, ensure that the value of **replicas** is equal to the value of **minimumReplicas**.

---

**Note:** The values of **minimumReplicas** and **replicas** must be greater than 0 to enable the elasticity of media server.

---

### Status attributes of elastic media server CR

Following table describes the ElasticityAttributes that describes the attributes associated with the media server autoscaler. These attributes are only applicable if autoscaler is running.

| Fields                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ExpectedReplicas         | <p>Indicates the ideal number of replicas computed by media server autoscaler that must be running. Default value is 0. It will be 0 if media server autoscaler is disabled.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If autoscaler is enabled (after that autoscaler is tuned off) the value would be set to the value of <b>minimumReplicas</b>. It will be <b>minimumReplicas</b> even if media server autoscaler is disabled.</p>                      |
| ActiveReplicas           | <p>Indicates the actual number of replicas that must be running to complete the ongoing operations on the media servers. Default value is 0. It will be 0 if media server autoscaler is disabled.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If autoscaler is enabled (after that autoscaler is tuned off) the value would be set to the value of <b>minimumReplicas</b>. It will be <b>minimumReplicas</b> even if media server autoscaler is disabled.</p> |
| NextIterationTime        | Indicates the next iteration time of the media server autoscaler that is, the media server autoscaler will run after NextIterationTime only. Default value is empty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| NextCertificateRenewTime | Next time to scale up all registered media servers for certificate renewal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Configuration parameters

### ■ ConfigMap

A new ConfigMap with name `nbu-media-autoscaler-configmap` is created during deployment and the key-value pairs would be consumed for tuning the media server autoscaler. This ConfigMap is common to all the media server CR objects and supports the following keys:

| Parameters                       | Description                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| memory-low-watermark-in-percent  | Low watermark for memory usage.                                                                                                            |
| memory-high-watermark-in-percent | High watermark for memory usage.                                                                                                           |
| cpu-low-watermark-in-percent     | Low watermark for CPU usage.                                                                                                               |
| cpu-high-watermark-in-percent    | High watermark for CPU usage.                                                                                                              |
| scaling-interval-in-seconds      | Interval after which media server autoscaler should run.                                                                                   |
| stabilitywindow-time-in-seconds  | CPU and memory usage is calculated between two time intervals. This key indicates the time interval to be considered for collecting usage. |

| Parameters                                        | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| stability-count                                   | CPU and memory usages are calculated by averaging out on multiple readings. This key indicates the number of readings to be considered.          |
| graceful-shutdown-interval-in-seconds             | The time interval after which the media server autoscaler should run incase it is not able to scale in due to running jobs on media server pods. |
| delayed-scalein-notifications-interval-in-minutes | The time interval between two successive notifications in the event that a scale in does not occur.                                              |

## ■ Media server scaling

| Parameters | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scale-out  | If the CPU or memory consumption is above the specified value provided in configMap but if any existing media server is idle that is, no jobs are running on it, then scale-out will not be performed. If all the existing media servers which are ready have jobs running on them, media server autoscaler will scale out a media server pod. |
| Scale-in   | If the CPU and memory consumption is below the specified values provided in configMap, media server autoscaler will scale in the media server pods. Ensure that the running jobs are completed.                                                                                                                                                |

**Note:** Media server autoscaler scales out single pod at a time but can scale in multiple pods at a time.

---

**Note:** If the scale-in does not happen due to background processes running on the media server, a notification would be sent on NetBackup Web UI after regular time interval as configured in the autoscaler ConfigMap. For more details, see the following section:

See [“Troubleshooting AKS and EKS issues”](#) on page 244.

---

The time taken for media server scale depends on the value of **scaling-interval-in-seconds** configuration parameter. During this interval, the

jobs would be served by existing media server replicas based on NetBackup throttling parameters. For example, Maximum concurrent jobs in storage unit, Number of jobs per client, and so on.

Cluster's native autoscaler takes some time as per **scale-down-unneeded-time** attribute, which decides on the time a node should be unneeded before it is eligible to be scaled down. By default this is 10 minutes. To change this parameter, edit the cluster-autoscaler's current deployment settings using the following commands and then edit the existing value:

- AKS: `az aks update -g $RESOURCE_GROUP_NAME -n`
- EKS: `kubectl -n kube-system edit deployment cluster-autoscaler`

**Note the following:**

- For scaled in media servers, certain resources and configurations are retained to avoid reconfiguration during subsequent scale out.
  - Kubernetes services, persistent volume claims and persistent volumes are not deleted for scaled in media servers.
  - Host entries for scaled in media servers are not removed from NetBackup primary server. Hence scaled in media server entries will be displayed on Web UI / API.
- For scaled down media servers, the deleted media servers are also displayed on Web UI/API during the credential validation for database servers.

## Certificate renewal scheduling

In order to ensure that the certificates are renewed on the media server replicas for which the pods were scaled in by media server autoscaler for longer duration, the NetBackup operator would scale out all the media server replicas once in a month for which certificate was issued. The scaled-out media server replicas would be then scaled in as per media server autoscaler.

## Monitoring the status of the CRs

You can view the status and other details of the primary server and media server CRs using the following commands:

- `kubectl get <PrimaryServer/MediaServer> -n <namespace> or`
- `kubectl describe <PrimaryServer/MediaServer> <CR name> -n <namespace>`

Following table describes the primary server CR and media server CR status fields:



Table 4-1

| Section                                                                                                        | Field / Value             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary Server Details<br><br>Only one hostname and IP address for the respective primary server.              | Host Name                 | Name of the primary server that should be used to access the web UI.                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                | IP                        | IP address to access the primary server.                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                | Version                   | This indicates that the NetBackup primary server version is installed.                                                                                                                           |
| Media Server Details<br><br>Number of hostname and IP address is equal to the replica count mentioned CR spec. | Host Name                 | Name of the media server.                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                                                | IP                        | IP address to access the media server.                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                | Version                   | This indicates that the NetBackup media server version is installed.                                                                                                                             |
| Attributes                                                                                                     | Resource Name             | Statefulset name of the respective server.                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                | Primary/Media server name | Name of the primary server or media server deployed.                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                | Config checker status     | Indicates the status of the config checker as passed, failed, or skipped. For more information on the Config-Checker, See <a href="#">“How does the Config-Checker utility work”</a> on page 25. |
|                                                                                                                | SHA Fingerprint           | Represents the SHA key fingerprint of the NetBackup primary server.<br><br><b>Note:</b> SHA Fingerprint represents the SHA256 CA certificate fingerprint of the primary server.                  |
| ElasticityAttributes                                                                                           |                           | Describes the attributes associated with the media server autoscaler. For more information on the elasticity attributes, See <a href="#">“Elastic media server”</a> on page 93.                  |

Table 4-1 (continued)

| Section       | Field / Value                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Details | Code                             | A code assigned to an error encountered during the CR deployment or during the config-check operation. For more information on the error, refer to the <i>NetBackup Status Code Reference Guide</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|               | Message                          | Message that describes the respective error code.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| State         | Success /Paused /Failed /Running | <p>Current state of the custom resource, from one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Success: Indicates that the deployment of Primary/Media Custom Resource (CR) is successful. However, this does not mean that the installation of the NetBackup primary/media servers is successful. The primary or media server StatefulSets and/or the pods might or might not be in a <b>ready</b> state, irrespective of that the Primary/Media CR state will show as Success.</li><li>■ Paused: Indicates that the reconciler is in <b>paused</b> state and deployment of a CR is paused.</li><li>■ Failed: Indicates that the deployment of a CR failed with errors. However this does not mean failed installation of the NetBackup Server. Errors can be analyzed from the Operator logs or CR <b>describe</b>.</li><li>■ Running: Indicates that the CR deployment is in progress and the resources are getting created.</li></ul> |
| Events        | INIT/FAILOVER/UPGRADE            | <p>The events like INIT, FAILOVER and UPGRADE are logged in here.</p> <p>The details of these events can also be added.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Updating the CRs

After the successful deployment of the primary server and media server CRs, you can update the values of only selected specs by editing the respective environment custom resource.

---

**Note:** Updating the Kubernetes resources (pod, configmap, services, statefulset etc) created for the CRs is not recommended.

---

Following tables describe the specs that can be edited for each CR.

**Table 4-2** Primary server CR

| Spec                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| paused                  | Specify <i>True</i> or <i>False</i> as a value, to temporarily stop the respective CR controller.<br><br><i>True</i> : Stop the controller.<br><i>False</i> : Resume the controller. |
| configCheckMode         | Specify <i>default</i> , <i>dryrun</i> or <i>skip</i> as a value.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Config-Checker execution and status details”</a> on page 27.                               |
| (AKS-specific) capacity | Catalog, log and data volume storage capacity can be updated.                                                                                                                        |

**Table 4-3** Media server CR

| Spec     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| paused   | Specify <i>True</i> or <i>False</i> as a value, to temporarily stop the respective CR controller.<br><br><i>True</i> : Stop the controller.<br><i>False</i> : Resume the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| replicas | Specifies the maximum number of replicas that the media server can scale up to.<br><br><b>Note:</b> It is recommended not to reduce the number of maximum replicas. To reduce the maximum number of replicas, perform the media server decommissioning steps mentioned in <a href="#">References to nonexistent or decommissioned media servers remain in NetBackup</a> . |

**Table 4-3** Media server CR (*continued*)

| Spec                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| minimumReplicas         | Describes the minimum number of replicas of the media server running. This is an optional field. If not specified, the value for this field will be set to the default value of 1. |
| configCheckMode         | Specify <i>default</i> , <i>dryrun</i> or <i>skip</i> as a value.<br><br>See <a href="#">“Config-Checker execution and status details”</a> on page 27.                             |
| (AKS-specific) capacity | Catalog, log and data volume storage capacity can be updated.                                                                                                                      |

If you edit any other fields, the deployment can go into an inconsistent state.

## Additional steps

- Delete the Load Balancer service created for the media server by running the following commands:  

```
$ kubectl get service --namespace <namespce_name>
$ kubectl delete service <service-name> --namespace <namespce_name>
```
- Identify and delete any outstanding persistent volume claims for the media server by running the following commands:  

```
$ kubectl get pvc --namespace <namespce_name>
$ kubectl delete pvc <pvc-name>
```
- Locate and delete any persistent volumes created for the media server by running the following commands:  

```
$ kubectl get pv
$ kubectl delete pv <pv-name> --grace-period=0 --force
```

## Deleting the CRs

If you must delete any of the CRs for a valid reason such as for the troubleshooting purpose, or because any of the specs provided were incorrect; you can reinstall the deleted CR after resolving the issues.

---

**Note:** Once installed, deleting a CR is not recommended as it will stop the deployment and NetBackup will not work.

---

Notes:

- Deleting a CR will delete all its child resources like pod, statefulset, services, configmaps, config checker job, config checker pod.
- Deleting operator with `kubectl delete -k <operator_folder_path>` will delete the CRs and its resources except the PVC.
- Persistent volume claim (PVC) will not be deleted upon deleting a CR so that the data is retained in the volumes. Then if you create a new CR with the same name as the deleted one, the existing PVC with that same name will be automatically linked to the newly created pods.
- Do not delete `/mnt/nbdata`, `/mnt/nblogs` and `/mnt/nbdb` folders manually from primary server and media pods. The NetBackup deployment will go into an inconsistent state and will also result in data loss.

## Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment

We can configure data collector on the primary server pod or on a separate host machine. Following are the steps for respective configurations.

---

**Note:** From NetBackup version 10.3, cloudscale release data collector on primary server pod is supported.

---

### Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment by configuring data collector on a primary server pod

Configure data collector on the primary server pod.

#### To configure NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment

- 1 Create DNS server entry in such a way that single IP must be resolvable to two FQDNs.

IP: 1.2.3.4 must be resolved to the following FQDNs:

```
itanalyticportal.<yourdomain>
itanalyticagent.<yourdomain>
```

Note the following:

- If the IT Analytics Portal URL is `itanalyticportal.<yourdomain>`, then ensure to add the DNS entries for the following hostnames:

```
itanalyticportal.<yourdomain>
itanalyticagent.<yourdomain>
```

- If the IT Analytics Portal URL is `aptareportal.<yourdomain>`, then ensure to add the DNS entries for the following hostnames:

```
aptareportal.<yourdomain>
aptareagent.<yourdomain>
```

- 2 Collect the `<your-collector-name>.key` file for the new data collector by accessing the IT Analytics portal link and creating a collector and copy it to the host machine from where Kubernetes cluster is accessed.

For more information, refer to the [NetBackup IT Analytics User Guide](#).

- 3 Execute the following command in the primary server pod:

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryServer-pod-name> -- bash
```

- 4 In case if the data-receiver is configured with self-signed certificate (https). User must add the certificate in the data collector.

For more information, refer to the [Configure the Data Collector to trust the certificate](#).

- 5 Create a new folder **analyticscollector** at persisted location (for example, `/mnt/nbdata/`) using the following commands:

```
cd "/mnt/nbdata/"
mkdir analyticscollector
```

- 6 Exit from the container and copy the `<your-collector-name>.key` file to `/mnt/nbdata/analyticscollector` using the `kubectl cp <keyfile-name> <namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nbdata/analyticscollector` command.

- 7 Execute the following command to exec into the primary server pod:

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryServer-pod-name> -- bash
```

- 8 Navigate to `/usr/openv/analyticscollector/installer/` location and perform the following:

- Open the `responsefile.sample` and add the following parameters:

Configuration for reference:

```
NetBackup.docx COLLECTOR_NAME=<your-collector-name>
COLLECTOR_PASSCODE=<your-password>
DR_URL=<http>/<https>://itanalyticsagent.<yourdomain>
COLLECTOR_KEY_PATH=/mnt/nbdata/analyticscollector/<your-collector-name>.key
HTTP_PROXY_CONF=N
HTTP_PROXY_ADDRESS=
```

```
HTTP_PROXY_PORT=
HTTPS_PROXY_ADDRESS=
HTTPS_PROXY_PORT=
PROXY_USERNAME=
PROXY_PASSWORD=
PROXY_EXCLUDE=
```

- Run `./dc_installer.sh -c /usr/opensv/analyticscollector/installer/responsefile.sample` command to connect data collector with IT Analytics portal
- 9** Validate data collector integration with IT Analytics by performing the following:
- Navigate to `/usr/opensv/analyticscollector/mbs/bin/` location.
  - Run the following command:  
`./checkinstall.sh`  
 If data collector is configured with portal, it will display as **SUCCESSFUL**.

- 10** Check the data collector services status by running the following command and ensure that the following data collector services are up and running:

```
/usr/opensv/analyticscollector/mbs/bin/aptare_agent status
```

Output of the above command:

```
IT Analytics WatchDog is running (pid: 13312).
IT Analytics MetaDataCollector is stopped.
IT Analytics EventDataCollector is stopped.
IT Analytics DataCollector process is running (pid: 13461).
IT Analytics On-demand process is running (pid: 13463).
IT Analytics Message Relay Server process is running (pid: 13471)
```

For more information about IT Analytics data collector policy, see [NetBackup IT Analytics User Guide](#).

## Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment by configuring data collector on a separate host machine

NetBackup IT Analytics can be configured to use with NetBackup primary server in this Kubernetes environment. NetBackup IT Analytics can be configured at the time of primary server deployment or user can update the primary server CR to configure NetBackup IT Analytics.

## To configure NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment

- 1 Using the `ssh-keygen` command, generates public key and private key on NetBackup IT Analytics data collector.  
  
NetBackup IT Analytics data collector uses passwordless ssh login.
- 2 Update the primary server CR, copy public key generated in previous steps to “itAnalyticsPublicKey” section in spec.
  - Apply the primary server CR changes using `kubectl apply -f environment.yaml -n <namespace>`.  
On successfully deployment of primary server CR, describe the primary server CR using `kubectl describe PrimaryServer <primary-server-name> -n <namespace>`
  - In status section, verify **It Analytics Configured** is set to **true**.  
For more information, refer to the [NetBackup™ Web UI Administrator's Guide](#).
- 3 Create and copy NetBackup API key from NetBackup web UI.
- 4 On NetBackup IT Analytics portal:
  - Navigate to **Admin > Collector Administration > Select respective data collector > Add policy > Veritas NetBackup > Add**.
  - Add required options, specify the NetBackup API in the **API Key** field, and then click **OK**.
  - Select newly added primary server from **NetBackup Master Servers** and provide **nbitanalyticsadmin** as **Master Server User ID**.
  - Provide **privateKey=<path-of-private-key>|password=<passphrase>** as **Master Server Password** and **Repeat Password** whereas **<path-of-private-key>** is the private key created using ssh-keygen in earlier steps and **<passphrase>** is the passphrase used while creating private key via ssh-keygen.
  - Provide appropriate data to data collector policy fields and select collection method as **SSH or WMI protocol to NetBackup Master Server**.

Configuring the primary server with NetBackup IT Analytics tools is supported only once from primary server CR.

For more information about IT Analytics data collector policy, see [Add a Veritas NetBackup Data Collector policy](#) and for more information about adding NetBackup Primary Servers within the Data Collector policy, see [Add/Edit NetBackup Master Servers within the Data Collector policy](#).



### To change the already configured public key

- 1 Execute the following command in the primary server pod:

```
kubect1 exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryServer-pod-name> --
/bin/bash
```
- 2 Copy the new public keys in the

```
/home/nbitanalyticsadmin/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

and

```
/mnt/nbdata/.ssh/nbitanalyticsadmin_keys
```

files.
- 3 Restart the **sshd** service using the `systemctl restart sshd` command.

## Managing NetBackup deployment using VxUpdate

VxUpdate package is not shipped with the NetBackup deployment package. You must download and add it in NetBackup primary server.

### To manage NetBackup deployment using VxUpdate

- 1 Download the required VxUpdate package on the docker-host used to interact with Kubernetes cluster.
- 2 Copy the VxUpdate package to primary server pod using the `kubect1 cp`

```
<path-vxupdate.sja>
<primaryServerNamespace>/<primaryServer-pod-name>:<path-on-primary-pod>
```

command.
- 3 After VxUpdate package is available on primary server Pod, add it to NetBackup repository using any one of the following:
  - Select the VxUpdate package from the NetBackup web UI.
  - Execute the following command in the primary server pod:

```
kubect1 exec -it -n <primaryserver-namespace>
<primaryServer-pod-name> -- bash
```

And run the following command:

```
nbrepo -a <vxupdate-package-path-on-PrimaryPod>
```

After adding the VxUpdate package to `nbrepo`, this package is persisted even after pod restarts.

## Migrating the cloud node for primary or media servers

You can migrate the following respective cloud node for primary or media servers:

- (AKS-specific) node pool
- (EKS-specific) node group

### To migrate the cloud node for primary or media servers

- 1 Edit environment CR object using the following command:

```
kubect1 edit environment <environmentCR_name> -n <namespace>
```

- 2 Change the node selector **labelKey** and **lableValue** to new values for primary/media server.
- 3 Save the environment CR.

This will change the statefulset for respective NetBackup server replica to 0 for respective server. This will terminate the pods. After successful migration, statefulset replicas will be set to original value.

# Deploying NetBackup using Helm charts

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview](#)
- [Installing NetBackup using Helm charts](#)
- [Uninstalling NetBackup using Helm charts](#)

## Overview

Helm is an open source packaging tool for deploying and managing the life cycle of complex Kubernetes applications using `helm` command line tool. A Helm chart helps define, install and upgrade the constituents of a Kubernetes application. The steps involved in the deployment of the Kubernetes application would be automated through a Helm chart for the application.

The Helm chart package is also an OCI compliant format which allows it to be pushed and pulled from OCI compliant registry such as Azure or AWS container registries. Therefore we can use the same deployment methodology (pull images and install) used for container images for Helm charts. This allows the container software and deployment tool to be packaged, shipped and installed together.

# Installing NetBackup using Helm charts

To install NetBackup using Helm charts on Kubernetes cluster, perform the following:

- 1 Download the NetBackup TAR package from Veritas download centre which contains the container images and the Helm chart for NetBackup Kubernetes application.
- 2 Push the container images under the `/images` folder in the TAR package to the container registry associated with the Kubernetes cluster.
- 3 Navigate to the `/helm` folder in the TAR package and perform the following:
  - Extract the Helm `values.yaml` file using the following command:

```
# helm show values netbackup-cloudscale-<version>.tar.gz > values.yaml
```
  - Edit the `values.yaml` file to fill-in the required input values similar to the `environment.yaml` file used for manual deployment.
  - Install the Helm chart specifying the `values.yaml` file using the following command:

```
# helm install <release-name> netbackup-cloudscale-<version>.tar.gz -f values.yaml
```
- 4 Using the following command, verify that all the pods in the `netbackup-operator-system` and NetBackup Namespaces go into ready state:

```
# kubectl get pods -n netbackup-operator-system, netbackup
```

# Uninstalling NetBackup using Helm charts

To uninstall NetBackup using Helm charts on Kubernetes cluster, perform the following:

- 1 Use the following command to list the NetBackup versions installed:

```
# helm list
```

Identify the NetBackup version that needs to be uninstalled.

- 2 Uninstall the identified NetBackup version (*release\_name*) using the following command:

```
# helm uninstall <release-name>
```

- 3 The pending global objects cluster roles and role bindings must be cleared up using the following `kubectl` commands:

```
# kubectl get storageclass -o name | grep nbux | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

```
# kubectl get ClusterRoles -o name | grep msdp | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

```
# kubectl get ClusterRoleBindings -o name | grep msdp | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

```
# kubectl get crds -o name | grep veritas.com | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

```
# kubectl get MutatingWebhookConfiguration -o name | grep -E 'msdp|netbackup' | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

```
# kubectl get ValidatingWebhookConfiguration -o name | grep -E 'msdp|netbackup' | xargs -r kubectl delete
```

# Deploying MSDP Scaleout

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Deploying MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Prerequisites for AKS](#)
- [Prerequisites for EKS](#)
- [Installing the docker images and binaries](#)
- [Initializing the MSDP operator](#)
- [Configuring MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Using MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup](#)
- [Configuring the MSDP cloud in MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Using S3 service in MSDP Scaleout for AKS](#)
- [Enabling MSDP S3 service after MSDP Scaleout is deployed for AKS](#)

## Deploying MSDP Scaleout

You must deploy MSDP Scaleout solution in your Kubernetes Cluster environment. AKS or EKS must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.

You can have multiple MSDP Scaleout deployments in the same cluster. Ensure that each MSDP Scaleout deployment runs in a dedicated namespace on a dedicated node pool.

Before you deploy the solution, ensure that your environment meets the requirements.

See [“Prerequisites for AKS”](#) on page 111.

See [“Prerequisites for EKS”](#) on page 113.

**Table 6-1** MSDP Scaleout deployment steps

| Step   | Task                                                     | Description                                                                                  |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Step 1 | Install the docker images and binaries.                  | See <a href="#">“Installing the docker images and binaries”</a> on page 115.                 |
| Step 2 | Initialize MSDP operator.                                | See <a href="#">“Initializing the MSDP operator”</a> on page 116.                            |
| Step 3 | Configuring MSDP Scaleout.                               | See <a href="#">“Configuring MSDP Scaleout”</a> on page 118.                                 |
| Step 4 | Use MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup. | See <a href="#">“Using MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup”</a> on page 119. |

See [“Cleaning up MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 240.

See [“Cleaning up the MSDP Scaleout operator”](#) on page 241.

# Prerequisites for AKS

## A working Azure Kubernetes cluster

- Azure Kubernetes cluster
  - Your Azure Kubernetes cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.  
Supported Azure Kubernetes cluster version is 1.21.x and later.
  - Availability zone for AKS cluster must be disabled.
  - At least one storage class is backed with Azure disk CSI storage driver "disk.csi.azure.com", and allows volume expansion. It must be in LRS category with Premium SSD. For example, the built-in storage class "managed-csi-premium". It is recommended that the storage class has "Retain" reclaim.
  - Cert-Manager must be installed.
  - A Kubernetes Secret that contains the MSDP credentials is required.  
See [“ Secret”](#) on page 284.
  - Enable AKS Uptime SLA.  
AKS Uptime SLA is recommended for a better resiliency.

For information about AKS Uptime SLA and to enable it, see [Azure Kubernetes Service \(AKS\) Uptime SLA](#).

- **Azure container registry (ACR)**  
Use existing ACR or create a new one. Your Kubernetes cluster must be able to access this registry to pull the images from.
- **Node Pool**  
You must have a dedicated node pool for MSDP Scaleout created. Azure availability zone must be disabled.  
The Azure autoscaling allows your node pool to scale dynamically as required. If Azure autoscaling is not enabled, ensure the node number is not less than MSDP Scaleout size.  
It is recommended that you set the minimum node number to 1 or more to bypass some limitations in AKS.
- **Client machine to access AKS cluster**
  - A separate computer that can access and manage your AKS cluster and ACR.
  - It must have Linux operating system.
  - It must have Docker daemon, the Kubernetes command-line tool (kubectl), and Azure CLI installed.  
The Docker storage size must be more than 6 GB. The version of kubectl must be v1.19.x or later. The version of Azure CLI must meet the AKS cluster requirements.
  - If AKS is a private cluster, see [Create a private Azure Kubernetes Service cluster](#).
- **Static Internal IPs**  
If the internal IPs are used, reserve the internal IPs (avoid the IPs that are reserved by other systems) for MSDP Scaleout and add DNS records for all of them in your DNS configuration.  
The Azure static public IPs can be used but is not recommended.  
If Azure static public IPs are used, create them in the node resource group for the AKS cluster. A DNS name must be assigned to each static public IP. The IPs must be in the same location of the AKS cluster.

## Existing NetBackup environment

MSDP Scaleout connects to the existing NetBackup environment with the required network ports 1556 and 443. The NetBackup primary server should be 10.0 or later. The NetBackup environment can be anywhere, locally or remotely. It may or may not be in AKS cluster. It may or may not be in the same AKS cluster.



If the NetBackup servers are on Azure cloud, besides the NetBackup configuration requirements, the following settings are recommended. They are not MSDP-specific requirements, they just help your NetBackup environment run smoothly on Azure cloud.

- Add the following in `/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf`

```
HOST_HAS_NAT_ENDPOINTS = YES
```

- Tune sysctl parameters as follows:

```
net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time=120
```

```
net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 14000 65535
```

```
net.core.somaxconn = 1024
```

Tune the max open files to 1048576 if you run concurrent jobs.

## Prerequisites for EKS

### A working Kubernetes cluster

- AWS Kubernetes cluster
  - Your AWS Kubernetes cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.  
Supported AWS Kubernetes cluster version is 1.21.x and later.
  - The node group in EKS should not cross availability zone.
  - At least one storage class that is backed with Amazon EBS CSI storage driver **ebs.csi.aws.com** or with the default provisioner **kubernetes.io/aws-ebs**, and allows volume expansion. The built-in storage class is **gp2**. It is recommended that the storage class has "Retain" reclaim policy.
  - AWS Load Balancer controller must be installed on EKS.
  - A Kubernetes Secret that contains the MSDP credentials is required.  
See "[Secret](#)" on page 284.
- Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)  
Use existing ECR or create a new one. Your Kubernetes cluster must be able to access this registry to pull the images from.
- Node Group

You must have a dedicated node group for MSDP Scaleout created. The node group should not cross availability zone.

The AWS Auto Scaling allows your node group to scale dynamically as required. If AWS Auto Scaling is not enabled, ensure the node number is not less than MSDP Scaleout size.

It is recommended that you set the minimum node number to 1 or more to bypass some limitations in EKS.

- Client machine to access EKS cluster
  - A separate computer that can access and manage your EKS cluster and ECR.
  - It must have Linux operating system.
  - It must have Docker daemon, the Kubernetes command-line tool (kubectl), and AWS CLI installed.

The Docker storage size must be more than 6 GB. The version of kubectl must be v1.19.x or later. The version of AWS CLI must meet the EKS cluster requirements.
  - If EKS is a private cluster, see [Creating an private Amazon EKS cluster](#).
- If the internal IPs are used, reserve N internal IPs and make sure they are not used. N matches the MSDP-X cluster size which is to be configured.

These IPs are used for network load balancer services. For the private IPs, please do not use the same subnet with the node group to avoid IP conflict with the secondary private IPs used in the node group.

For the DNS name, you can use the Private IP DNS name amazon provided, or you can create DNS and Reverse DNS entries under Route53.

## Existing NetBackup environment

MSDP Scaleout connects to the existing NetBackup environment with the required network ports 1556 and 443. The NetBackup primary server should be 10.0 or later. The NetBackup environment can be anywhere, locally or remotely. It may or may not be in EKS cluster. It may or may not be in the same EKS cluster.

If the NetBackup servers are on AWS cloud, besides the NetBackup configuration requirements, the following settings are recommended. They are not MSDP-specific requirements, they just help your NetBackup environment run smoothly on AWS cloud.

- Add the following in `/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf`

```
HOST_HAS_NAT_ENDPOINTS = YES
```

- Tune sysctl parameters as follows:

```
net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time=120
```

```
net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 14000 65535
```

```
net.core.somaxconn = 1024
```

Tune the max open files to 1048576 if you run concurrent jobs.

## Installing the docker images and binaries

The MSDP package `VRTSpddek.tar.gz` for Kubernetes includes the following:

- A docker image for MSDP operator
- 3 docker images for MSDP Scaleout: `uss-controller`, `uss-mds`, and `uss-engine`
- A kubectl plugin: `kubectl-msdp`

### To install the docker images and binaries for AKS

- 1 Download `VRTSpddek.tar.gz` from the Veritas site.
- 2 Load the docker images to your docker storage.

```
tar -zxvf VRTSpddek.tar.gz
```

```
ls VRTSpddek-*/images/*.tar.gz|xargs -i docker load -i {}
```

- 3 Copy MSDP kubectl plugin to a directory from where you access AKS or EKS host. This directory can be configured in the `PATH` environment variable so that kubectl can load `kubectl-msdp` as a plugin automatically.

For example,

```
cp ./VRTSpddek-*/bin/kubectl-msdp /usr/local/bin/
```

- 4 Push the docker images to the ACR. Keep the image name and version same as original.

```
docker login <your-acr-url>
```

```
for image in msdp-operator uss-mds uss-controller uss-engine; do \
    docker image tag $image:<version> <your-acr-url>/$image:<version>; \
    docker push <your-acr-url>/$image:<version>; \
done
```

**To install the docker images and binaries for EKS**

- 1 Download `VRTSpddek.tar.gz` from the Veritas site.

- 2 Load the docker images to your docker storage.

```
tar -zxvf VRTSpddek.tar.gz

ls VRTSpddek-*/images/*.tar.gz|xargs -i docker load -i {}
```

- 3 Copy MSDP kubectl plugin to a directory from where you access AKS or EKS host. This directory can be configured in the PATH environment variable so that kubectl can load kubectl-msdp as a plugin automatically.

For example,

```
cp ./VRTSpddek-*/bin/kubectl-msdp /usr/local/bin/
```

- 4 Push the docker images to the ECR.

- Log in.

```
aws ecr get-login-password \
--region <region> \
| docker login \
--username AWS \
--password-stdin \
<aws_account_id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com
```

- Create a repository.

See AWS documentation [Creating a private repository](#)

- Push the docker images to ECR. Keep the image name and version same as original.

```
for image in msdp-operator uss-mds uss-controller
uss-engine; do \
docker image tag $image:<version> <your-ecr-url>/$image:<version>; \
docker push <your-ecr-url>/$image:<version>; \
done
```

## Initializing the MSDP operator

Run the following command to initialize MSDP operator.

- For AKS

```
kubectl msdp init -i <acr-url>/msdp-operator:<version> -s
<storage-class-name> [-l agentpool=<nodepool-name>]
```

- For EKS

```
kubectl msdp init -i <ecr-url>/msdp-operator:<version> -s
<storage-class-name> [-l agentpool=<nodegroup-name>]
```

You can use the following `init` command options.

**Table 6-2**      `init` command options

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -i     | MSDP operator images on your ACR or ECR.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| -s     | The storage class name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -l     | Node selector of the MSDP operator.<br><br>By default, each node pool has a unique label with key-value pair. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ AKS: <code>agentpool=&lt;nodepool-name&gt;</code></li> <li>■ EKS: <code>agentpool=&lt;nodegroup-name&gt;</code></li> </ul> If you have assigned a different and cluster-wise unique label for the node pool, you can use that instead of <code>agentpool</code> . |
| -c     | Core pattern of the operator pod.<br><br>Default value: <code>"/core/core.%e.%p.%t"</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| -d     | Enable debug-level logging in MSDP operator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| -a     | The maximum number of days to retain the old log files.<br><br>Range: 1-365<br><br>Default value: 28                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| -u     | The maximum number of old log files to retain.<br><br>Range: 1-20<br><br>Default value: 20                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| -n     | Namespace scope for this request.<br><br>Default value: <code>msdp-operator-system</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| -o     | Generate MSDP operator CRD YAML.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| -h     | Help for the <code>init</code> command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

This command installs Custom Resource Definitions (CRD) **msdp scaleouts.msdp.veritas.com** and deploys MSDP operator in the Kubernetes

environment. MSDP operator runs with Deployment Kubernetes workload type with single replica size in the default namespace **msdp-operator-system**.

MSDP operator also exposes the following services:

- **Webhook service**  
The webhook service is consumed by Kubernetes api-server to mutate and validate the user inputs and changes of the MSDP CR for the MSDP Scaleout configuration.
- **Metrics service**  
AKS: The metric service is consumed by Kubernetes/AKS for Azure Container Insight integration.  
EKS: The metric service is consumed by Kubernetes/EKS for Amazon CloudWatch integration.

You can deploy only one MSDP operator instance in a Kubernetes cluster.

Run the following command to check the MSDP operator status.

```
kubectl -n msdp-operator-system get pods -o wide
```

## Configuring MSDP Scaleout

After you push the docker images to ACR and initialize MSDP operator, configure MSDP Scaleout.

### To configure MSDP Scaleout

- 1 Create a dedicated namespace for MSDP Scaleout to run.

```
kubectl create ns <sample-namespace>
```

- 2 Create an MSDP Scaleout Secret. The Secret is used in CR.

```
kubectl apply -f <secret-yaml-file>
```

See “[Secret](#)” on page 284.

- 3 This step is applicable only for AKS and is an optional step.

Create an MSDP S3 root credential secret. The secret is used in CR.

```
$ kubectl msdp generate-s3-secret --namespace <sample-namespace>  
--s3secret <s3-secret-name>
```

- 4 Display the custom resource (CR) template.

```
kubectl msdp show -c
```

- 5 Save the CR template.

```
kubectl msdp show -c -f <file path>
```

- 6 Edit the CR file in the text editor.
- 7 Apply the CR file to the cluster.

---

**Caution:** Add `MSDP_SERVER = <first Engine FQDN>` in `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf` file on the NetBackup primary server before applying the CR YAML.

---

```
kubectl apply -f <sample-cr-yaml>
```

- 8 Monitor the configuration progress.

```
kubectl get all -n <namespace> -o wide
```

In the **STATUS** column, if the readiness state for the controller, MDS and engine pods are all **Running**, it means that the configuration has completed successfully.

In the **READINESS GATES** column for engines, 1/1 indicates that the engine configuration has completed successfully.

- 9 If you specified `spec.autoRegisterOST.enabled: true` in the CR, when the MSDP engines are configured, the MSDP operator automatically registers the storage server, a default disk pool, and a default storage unit in the NetBackup primary server.

A field **ostAutoRegisterStatus** in the Status section indicates the registration status. If **ostAutoRegisterStatus.registered** is **True**, it means that the registration has completed successfully.

You can run the following command to check the status:

```
kubectl get msdp scaleouts.msdp.veritas.com -n <sample-namespace>
```

You can find the storage server, the default disk pool, and storage unit on the Web UI of the NetBackup primary server.

## Using MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup

If you did not enable automatic registration of the storage server (autoRegisterOST) in the CR, you can configure it manually using the NetBackup Web UI.

See “[MSDP Scaleout CR](#)” on page 285.

**To use MSDP Scaleout as a single storage pool in NetBackup**

- 1 Follow the OpenStorage wizard with storage type **PureDisk** to create the storage server using the first Engine FQDN.  
  
MSDP storage server credentials are defined in the Secret resource.  
  
For more information, see *Create a Cloud storage, OpenStorage, or AdvancedDisk storage server* topic of the *NetBackup Web UI Administrator's Guide*.
- 2 Follow the MSDP wizard to create the disk pool.  
  
For more information, see *Create a disk pool* topic of the *NetBackup Web UI Administrator's Guide*.
- 3 Follow the MSDP wizard to the storage unit.  
  
For more information, see *Create a disk pool* topic of the *NetBackup Web UI Administrator's Guide*.

You can use MSDP Scaleout like the legacy single-node MSDP.

## Configuring the MSDP cloud in MSDP Scaleout

After you configure the local LSU, you can also configure MSDP cloud in MSDP Scaleout.

For more information about MSDP cloud support, see the *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

## Using S3 service in MSDP Scaleout for AKS

Ensure that S3 credential secret field and S3 service IP/FQDN fields are updated in the environment YAML file or MSDP Scaleout CR YAML file.

See [“Enabling MSDP S3 service after MSDP Scaleout is deployed for AKS”](#) on page 121.



### To use S3 service in MSDP Scaleout

#### 1 Check the S3 service status.

Run the following command to check if S3 service is configured or not:

```
$ kubectl get msdp scaleouts.msdp.veritas.com/<MSDP Scaleout CR name> -n <sample-namespace> -o=jsonpath={.status.s3srvConfigured}
```

If the command output is true, S3 service is configured and ready for use. Otherwise, wait for the flag to be true. The flag changes to true automatically after all MSDP Scaleout resources are ready.

#### 2 Use the following URL to access S3 service in MSDP Scaleout:

```
https://<MSDP-S3-FQDN>
```

#### Limitations:

- S3 service in MSDP Scaleout only supports NBCA certificates. You can use the CA certificate in NetBackup primary server to bypass SSL warnings when accessing S3 service. The CA certificate file path is `/usr/opensv/var/webtruststore/cacert.pem`. For example, when using AWS CLI you can use `-ca-bundle` parameter to specify CA certificate file path to bypass SSL warnings.
- The region name of MSDP S3 service is the LSU name that is used to store S3 data. Set the default region name to **PureDiskVolume** to use the MSDP local LSU to store the S3 data.
- Recommend 500~800 concurrent requests based on your Kubernetes node's performance.

## Enabling MSDP S3 service after MSDP Scaleout is deployed for AKS

If MSDP S3 service is not enabled during the initial deployment, you can enable it later.

## To enable MSDP S3 service

- 1 Generate S3 root credential. Run the following command to generate the secret:

```
$ kubectl msdp generate-s3-secret --namespace <sample-namespace>
--s3secret <s3-secret-name>
```

Ensure that you save the S3 credential at a secure place after it is generated for later use.

If MSDP kubectl plug-in is not installed, copy MSDP kubectl plug-in from the operator TAR folder to a directory from where you access AKS host. This directory can be configured in the PATH environment variable so that kubectl can load MSDP kubectl as a plug-in automatically.

For example,

```
$ cp ./VRTSk8s-netbackup-<version>-0065/bin/kubectl-msdp
/usr/local/bin/
```

- 2 Input S3 credential field and S3 IP/FQDN fields in existing CR resources.
  - If the MSDP Scaleout is deployed with environment YAML, run the following command to update the `spec.msdpScaleouts[<index>].s3Credential` and `spec.msdpScaleouts[<index>].s3Ip` fields in the existing CR resources:

```
$ kubectl edit environment <environmentCR_name> -n
<sample-namespace>
```

Content format:

```
msdpScaleouts:

- credential:
  autoDelete: true
  secretName: msdp-creds
  skipPrecheck: false

  s3Credential:
    secretName: <s3secretName>

  s3Ip:
    ipAddr: <s3IpAddress>
    fqdn: <s3Fqdn>
```

- If the MSDP Scaleout is deployed with MSDP Scaleout YAML, run the following command to update the `spec.s3Credential` and `spec.s3ServiceIPFQDN` fields in the existing CR resources:

```
$ kubectl edit msdp-scaleout <MSDP Scaleout CR name> -n
<sample-namespace>
```

### Content format:

spec:

```
credential:
  autoDelete: true
  secretName: msdp-creds
  skipPrecheck: false

s3Credential:
  secretName: <s3secretName>

s3ServiceIPFQDN:
  ipAddr: <s3IpAddress>
  fqdn: <s3Fqdn>
```

### 3 Provide the NetBackup token for MSDP S3.

If the MSDP Scaleout is deployed with environment YAML, skip this step. This step is done automatically by the environment operator.

If the MSDP Scaleout is deployed with MSDP Scaleout YAML, create a token from NetBackup web UI. Navigate to **Security > Tokens > Add**. Run the following command to create a token secret in Kubernetes:

```
$ kubectl create secret generic <S3-token-secret-name> --namespace
<sample-namespace> --from-literal=token=<token-value>
```

Run the following command to update the `spec.nbca.s3TokenSecret` field in the existing CR resources:

```
$ kubectl edit msdp*scaleout <MSDP Scaleout CR name> -n
<sample-namespace>
```

Content format:

```
spec:
  nbca:
    s3TokenSecret: <S3-token-secret-name>
```

Wait for a few minutes. MSDP operator enables S3 service automatically.

### 4 Run the following command to check the S3 service status:

```
$ kubectl get msdp*scaleouts.msdp.veritas.com/<MSDP Scaleout CR
name> -o=jsonpath={.status.s3srvConfigured}
```

If the command output is true, S3 service is configured and ready for use.

# Deploying Snapshot Manager

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Installing the docker images](#)

## Prerequisites

### A working Azure Kubernetes cluster (AKS cluster)

- Azure Kubernetes cluster
  - Your Azure Kubernetes cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.  
Supported Azure Kubernetes cluster version is 1.21.x and later.
  - Availability zone for AKS cluster must be disabled.
  - Two storage classes with the following configurations is required:

| Storage class field  | Data               | Log                |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| provisioner          | disk.csi.azure.com | file.csi.azure.com |
| storageaccounttype   | Premium_LRS        | Premium_LRS        |
| reclaimPolicy        | Retain             | Retain             |
| allowVolumeExpansion | True               | True               |

- A Kubernetes Secret that contains the required Snapshot Manager credentials.
- Azure container registry (ACR)  
Use existing ACR or create a new one. Your Kubernetes cluster must be able to access this registry to pull the images from ACR.
- Node Pool  
You must have a dedicated node pool for Snapshot Manager created. The Azure autoscaling allows your node pool to scale dynamically as required.  
It is recommended that you set the minimum node number to 1 or more to bypass some limitations in AKS.  
User must enable managed identity on the control node pool and add appropriate role for Snapshot Manager to operate.
- Client machine to access AKS cluster
  - A separate computer that can access and manage your AKS cluster and ACR.
  - It must have Linux operating system.
  - It must have Docker daemon, the Kubernetes command-line tool (kubectl), and Azure CLI installed.  
The Docker storage size must be more than 6 GB. The version of kubectl must be v1.19.x or later. The version of Azure CLI must meet the AKS cluster requirements.
  - If AKS is a private cluster, see [Create a private Azure Kubernetes Service cluster](#).
- Static Internal IPs  
If the internal IPs are used, reserve the internal IPs (avoid the IPs that are reserved by other systems) for Snapshot Manager and add DNS records for all of them in your DNS configuration.  
The Azure static public IPs can be used but is not recommended.  
If Azure static public IPs are used, create them in the node resource group for the AKS cluster. A DNS name must be assigned to each static public IP. The IPs must be in the same location of the AKS cluster.
- Ensure that the managed identity has the scope to connect to the resource group of the cluster created for cloud scale deployment.

## **A working Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services cluster (EKS cluster)**

- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services cluster

- Your Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services cluster must be created with appropriate network and configuration settings.  
Supported Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Services cluster version is 1.21.x and later.
- Two storage classes with the following configurations is required:

| Storage class field  | Data                  | Log             |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| provisioner          | kubernetes.io/aws-ebs | efs.csi.aws.com |
| reclaimPolicy        | Retain                | Retain          |
| allowVolumeExpansion | True                  | True            |

**Note:** It is recommended to use a separate EFS for Snapshot Manager deployment and primary server catalog.

- A Kubernetes Secret that contains the required Snapshot Manager credentials.
- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service containerSnapshot Manager registry (ECR)  
Use existing ECR or create a new one. Your Kubernetes cluster must be able to access this registry to pull the images from ECR.
- Node group  
You must have a dedicated node group created for Snapshot Manager's scalable workflow and data movement services. It is recommended to use the NetBackup primary server's node group for Snapshot Manager's control services.  
User must assign same IAM role with required permissions to both the node groups, that is control node group and data node group.
- Client machine to access EKS cluster
  - A separate computer that can access and manage your EKS cluster and ECR.
  - It must have Linux operating system.
  - It must have Docker daemon, the Kubernetes command-line tool (kubectl), and AWS CLI installed.  
The Docker storage size must be more than 6 GB. The version of kubectl must be v1.21.x or later. The version of AWS CLI must meet the EKS cluster requirements.
  - If EKS is a private cluster, see [Create a private Amazon EKS Service cluster](#).

- **Static Internal IPs**  
If the internal IPs are used, reserve the internal IPs (avoid the IPs that are reserved by other systems) for Snapshot Manager and add forward and reverse DNS records for all of them in your DNS configuration.  
The AWS static public IPs can be used but is not recommended.

## Installing the docker images

The Snapshot Manager package

`netbackup-flexsnap-$(SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION).tar.gz` for Kubernetes includes the following:

- A docker image for Snapshot Manager operator
- 8 docker images for Snapshot Manager: `flexsnap-certauth`, `flexsnap-rabbitmq`, `flexsnap-fluentd`, `flexsnap-datamover`, `flexsnap-nginx`, `flexsnap-mongodb`, `flexsnap-core`, `flexsnap-deploy`

### To install the docker images

- 1 **Download** `netbackup-flexsnap-$(SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION).tar.gz` from the Veritas site.
- 2 **Load** the docker images to your docker storage.

```
docker load -i  
netbackup-flexsnap-$(SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION).tar.gz
```



### 3 Tag the images.

```
$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag
veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}

$ docker tag veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
```

---

**Note:** Ensure that you use the same tag as that of Snapshot Manager image version. Custom tag cannot be used.

---

#### 4 Push the images.

```
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-certauth:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-fluentd:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-datamover:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-nginx:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-mongodb:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-core:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}  
  
$ docker push  
${REGISTRY}/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:${SNAPSHOT_MANAGER_VERSION}
```

#### Configure Snapshot Manager

After you push the docker images to the following respective registry, then initialize Snapshot Manager (flexsnap) operator and configure Snapshot Manager:

- *(AKS-specific)* Azure container
- *(EKS-specific)* Amazon Elastic container

The Snapshot Manager operator starts with NetBackup operator. For more information, refer to the following section:

See [“Deploying the operators”](#) on page 35.

- 1 Use existing dedicated namespace for Snapshot Manager to run:

```
kubectl create ns <sample-namespace>
```

- 2 Edit the cpServer CR section of the `environment.yaml` file in the text editor.

See [“Configuring the environment.yaml file”](#) on page 56.

- 3 Apply the CR file to the Kubernetes cluster:

```
kubectl apply -f <sample-cr-yaml>
```

**4** Monitor the configuration process:

```
kubect1 get all -n <namespace> -o wide
```

**5** Verify the status by running the following command:

```
kubect1 get cpservers -n <sample-namespace>
```

# Verifying Cloud Scale deployment

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Verifying Cloud Scale deployment](#)

## Verifying Cloud Scale deployment

Execute the following command to verify if the Cloud Scale deployment is successful:

```
kubectl get
primaryserver,mediaserver,msdpyscaleout,cpserver,environment -n
<netbackup-namespace>
```

The output should display the name and status of all the CRs. If the value of **STATUS** field for each CR is displayed as **Success**, then it indicates that the deployment is successful.

The output message for a successful Cloud Scale deployment is as follows:

```
# kubectl get
primaryserver,mediaserver,msdpyscaleout,cpserver,environment -n
<netbackup-namespace>
```

| NAME                                       | AGE            | STATUS | TAG |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|-----|
| primaryserver.netbackup.veritas.com/<name> | 19.0.10.3.0050 | 3d21h  |     |
| Success                                    |                |        |     |

NAME

TAG

| AGE | PRIMARY SERVER                                  | STATUS               |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
|     | mediaserver.netbackup.veritas.com/<name>        | 19.0.10.3.0050 3d20h |
|     | nbuxqa-alphaqa-10-244-67-67.vxindia.veritas.com | Success              |

| NAME                                  | AGE   | TAG            | SIZE |
|---------------------------------------|-------|----------------|------|
| READY                                 |       |                |      |
| msdp*scaleout.msdp.veritas.com/<name> | 3d21h | 19.0.10.3.0050 | 1    |
| 1                                     |       |                |      |

| NAME                                  | AGE           | STATUS | TAG |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|--------|-----|
| cpserver.netbackup.veritas.com/<name> | 10.3.0.0.1054 | 3d20h  |     |
| Success                               |               |        |     |

| NAME                                     | STATUS | READY | AGE     |
|------------------------------------------|--------|-------|---------|
| environment.netbackup.veritas.com/<name> | 4/4    | 3d21h | Success |

For further confirmation, verify if the Web UI of the Primary Server is accessible through *https://<Primary Server's FQDN>/webui/login/*.

## Monitoring and Management

- [Chapter 9. Monitoring NetBackup](#)
- [Chapter 10. Monitoring MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Chapter 11. Monitoring Snapshot Manager](#)
- [Chapter 12. Managing the Load Balancer service](#)
- [Chapter 13. Managing MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Chapter 14. Managing PostgreSQL DBaaS](#)
- [Chapter 15. Performing catalog backup and recovery](#)
- [Chapter 16. Setting key parameters in Cloud Scale deployments](#)

# Monitoring NetBackup

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Monitoring the application health](#)
- [Telemetry reporting](#)
- [About NetBackup operator logs](#)
- [Expanding storage volumes](#)
- [Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods](#)

## Monitoring the application health

Kubernetes Liveness and Readiness probes are used to monitor and control the health of the NetBackup primary server and media server pods. The probes collectively also called as health probes, keep checking the availability and readiness of the pods, and take designated actions in case of any issues. The kubelet uses liveness probes to know when to restart a container, and readiness probes to know when a container is ready. For more information, refer to the Kubernetes documentation.

[Configure Liveness, Readiness and Startup Probes | Kubernetes](#)

The health probes monitor the following for the NetBackup deployment:

- Mount directories are present for the data/catalog at `/mnt/nbdata` and the log volume at `/mnt/nblogs`.
- `bp.conf` is present at `/usr/opensv/netbackup`
- NetBackup services are running as expected.

Following table describes the actions and time intervals configured for the probes:

Table 9-1

| Action                        | Description                                                                                                                              | Probe name      | Primary server (seconds) | Media server (seconds) |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Initial delay                 | This is the delay that tells kubelet to wait for a given number of seconds before performing the first probe.                            | Readiness Probe | 120                      | 60                     |
|                               |                                                                                                                                          | Liveness Probe  | 300                      | 90                     |
| Periodic execution time       | This action specifies that kubelet should perform a probe every given number of seconds.                                                 | Readiness Probe | 30                       | 30                     |
|                               |                                                                                                                                          | Liveness Probe  | 90                       | 90                     |
| Threshold for failure retries | This action specifies that kubelet should retry the probe for given number of times in case a probe fails, and then restart a container. | Readiness Probe | 1                        | 1                      |
|                               |                                                                                                                                          | Liveness Probe  | 5                        | 5                      |

Health probes are run using the `nb-health` command. If you want to manually run the `nb-health` command, the following options are available:

- **Disable**  
This option disables the health check that will mark pod as not ready (0/1).
- **Enable**  
This option enables the already disabled health check in the pod. This marks the pod in ready state(1/1) again if all the NetBackup health checks are passed.
- **Deactivate**  
This option deactivates the health probe functionality in pod. Pod remains in ready state(1/1). This will avoid pod restarts due to health probes like liveness, readiness probe failure. This is the temporary step and not recommended to use in usual case.
- **Activate**



This option activates the health probe functionality that has been deactivated earlier using the **deactivate** option.

You can manually disable or enable the probes if required. For example, if for any reason you need to exec into the pod and restart the NetBackup services, the health probes should be disabled before restarting the services, and then they should be enabled again after successfully restarting the NetBackup services. If you do not disable the health probes during this process, the pod may restart due to the failed health probes.

---

**Note:** It is recommended to disable the health probes only temporarily for troubleshooting purposes. When the probes are disabled, the web UI is not accessible in case of the primary server pod, and the media server pods cannot be scaled up. Then the health probes must be enabled again to successfully run NetBackup.

---

### To disable or enable the health probes

- 1 Execute the following command in the Primary or media server pod as required:

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary/media-server-pod-name>  
-- /bin/bash
```

- 2 To disable the probes, run the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health disable` command. Then the pod goes into the **not ready** (0/1) state.

- 3 To enable the probes, run the `"/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health enable"` command. Then the pod will be back into the **ready** (1/1) state.

You can check pod events in case of probe failures to get more details using the `kubectl describe <primary/media-pod-name> -n <namesapce>` command.

## Telemetry reporting

Telemetry reporting entries for the NetBackup deployment on AKS/EKS are indicated with the **AKS/EKS based deployments** text.

- By default, the telemetry data is saved at the `/var/veritas/nbtelemetry/` location. The default location will not persisted during the pod restarts.
- If you want to save telemetry data to persisted location, then execute the `kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary/media_server_pod_name> - /bin/bash` command in the pod using the and execute telemetry command using `/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/nbtelemetry` with `--dataset-path=DESIRED_PATH` option.

- Exec into the primary server pod using the following command:  

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary/media_server_pod_name>  
-- /bin/bash
```
- Execute telemetry command using  

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/nbtelemetry with  
--dataset-path=DESIRED_PATH
```

---

**Note:** Here `DESIRED_PATH` must be `/mnt/nbdata` or `/mnt/nblogs`.

---

## About NetBackup operator logs

Note the following about the NetBackup operator logs.

- NetBackup operator logs can be checked using the operator pod logs using the  

```
kubectl logs <Netbackup-operator-pod-name> -c netbackup-operator  
-n <netbackup-opertaor-namespace>
```

 command.
- NetBackup operator provides different log levels that can be changed before deployment of NetBackup operator.  
The following log levels are provided:

- -1 - Debug
- 0 - Info
- 1 - Warn
- 2 - Error

By default, the log level is 0.

It is recommended to use 0, 1, or 2 log level depending on your requirement. Before you deploy NetBackup operator, you can change the log levels using `operator_patch.yaml`.

After deployment if user changes operator log level, to reflect it, user has to perform the following steps:

- Apply the operator changes using the `kubectl apply -k <operator-folder>` command.
- Restart the operator pod. Delete the pod using the `kubectl delete pod/<netbackup-opertaor-pod-name> -n <namespace>` command.  
Kubernetes will recreate the NetBackup operator pod again after deletion.
- Config-Checker jobs that run before deployment of primary server and media server creates the pod. The logs for config checker executions can be checked

using the `kubectl logs <configchecker-pod-name> -n <netbackup-operator-namespace>` command.

- Installation logs of NetBackup primary server and media server can be retrieved using any of the following methods:

- Run the `kubectl logs <PrimaryServer/MediaServer-Pod-Name> -n <PrimaryServer/MediaServer namespace>` command.

- Execute the following command in the primary server/media server pod and check the `/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.log` file:

```
kubectl exec -it <PrimaryServer/MediaServer-Pod-Name> -n
<PrimaryServer/MediaServer-namespace> -- bash
```

- (*AKS-specific*) Data migration jobs create the pods that run before deployment of primary server. The logs for data migration execution can be checked using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

- Execute the following respective commands to check the event logs that shows deployment logs for PrimaryServer and MediaServer:

- For primary server: `kubectl describe PrimaryServer <PrimaryServer name> -n <PrimaryServer-namespace>`

- For media server: `kubectl describe MediaServer<MediaServername> -n<MediaServer-namespace>`

## Expanding storage volumes

You can update storage capacity of already created persistent volume claim for primary server and media server. Expanding storage volume for particular replica of respective CR object is not supported. In case of media server user needs to update volumes for all the replicas of particular media server object.

**(AKS-specific) To expand storage capacity of catalog volume in primary server**

- 1 Edit the environment custom resource using the `kubectl edit Environment <environmentCR_name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 2 Update storage capacity for respective volume in **storage** subsection of **primary** section.
- 3 Save the changes.

PVC will expand as per the new size and it will be available to volume mounts in primaryServer pod.

## To expand volume of data and log volumes for primary and media server

---

**Note:** (*EKS-specific*) Amazon EFS is an elastic file system, it does not enforce any file system capacity limits. The actual storage capacity value in persistent volumes and persistent volume claims is not used when creating the file system. However, because storage capacity is a required field in Kubernetes, you must specify a valid value. This value does not limit the size of your Amazon EFS file system.

---

- 1 Edit the environment custom resource using the `kubectl edit Environment <environmentCR_name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 2 To pause the reconciler of the particular custom resource, change the *paused: false* value to *paused: true* in the `primaryServer` or `mediaServer` section and save the changes. In case of multiple media server objects change `Paused` value to `true` for respective media server object only.
- 3 Edit `StatefulSet` of primary server or particular media server object using the `kubectl edit <statfulset name> -n <namespace>` command, change replica count to 0 and wait for all pods to terminate for the particular CR object.
- 4 Update all the persistent volume claim which expects capacity resize with the `kubectl edit pvc <pvcName> -n <namespace>` command. In case of particular media server object, resize respective PVC with expected storage capacity for all its replicas.
- 5 Update the respective custom resource section using the `kubectl edit Environment <environmentCR_name> -n <namespace>` command with updated storage capacity for respective volume and change *paused: false*. Save updated custom resource.

To update the storage details for respective volume, add storage section with specific volume and its capacity in respective `primaryServer` or `mediaServer` section in environment CR.

Earlier terminated pod and `StatefulSet` must get recreated and running successfully. Pod should get linked to respective persistent volume claim and data must have been persisted.

- 6 Run the `kubectl get pvc -n <namespace>` command and check for **capacity** column in result to check the persistent volume claim storage capacity is expanded.
- 7 (Optional) Update the log retention configuration for NetBackup depending on the updated storage capacity.

For more information, refer to the NetBackup™ Administrator's Guide, Volume I

# Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods

For allocating static PV for primary and media pods, refer to the following respective sections:

- (AKS-specific) See [“\(AKS-specific\) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods”](#) on page 141.
- (EKS-specific) See [“\(EKS-specific\) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods”](#) on page 145.

## (AKS-specific) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods

When you want to use a disk with specific performance parameters, you can statically create the PV and PVC. You must allocate static PV and PVC before deploying the NetBackup server for the first time.

### To allocate static PV for Primary and Media pods

- 1 Create storage class in cluster as per recommendations.

See [“How does the Config-Checker utility work”](#) on page 25. for storage class recommendation.

This newly created storage class name is used while creating PV and PVC's and should be mentioned for Catalog, Log, Data volume in the environment CR in primaryServer and mediaServer section at the time of deployment.

For more information on creating storage class, see [Create a custom storage class](#).

For example,

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: managed-premium-retain
provisioner: disk.csi.azure.com
reclaimPolicy: Retain
allowVolumeExpansion: true
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
parameters:
  storageaccounttype: Premium_LRS
  kind: Managed
```

- 2 Calculate number of disks required.

The following persistent volumes are required by Primary and Media pods:

- Catalog, Data and Log volume disk for primary server.
- Data and Log volume disk per replica of media server.

Use the following format to form PVC names.

For primary server

- catalog-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0
- data-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0
- logs-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0

For media server

- data-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media>-media-<media server replica number. Count starts from 0>
- logs-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media>-media-<media server replica number. Count starts from 0>

**Example 1** If user wants to deploy a media server with replica count 3.

Names of the Media PVC assuming resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media is **testmedia**.

For this scenario, you must create total 8 disks, 8 PV and 8 PVCs.

6 disks, 6 PV and 6 PVCs for media server.

Following will be the names for:

#### **Primary server**

- For catalog: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
- For data: data-testprimary-primary-0
- For logs: logs-testprimary-primary-0

#### **Media server**

- For data:
  - data-testmedia-media-0
  - data-testmedia-media-1
  - data-testmedia-media-2
- For log:
  - logs-testmedia-media-0
  - logs-testmedia-media-1
  - logs-testmedia-media-2

**Example 2** If user wants to deploy a media server with replica count 5

Names of the Media PVC assuming resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media is **testmedia**.

For this scenario, you must create 12 disks, 12 PV and 12 PVCs

10 disks, 10 PV and 10 PVCs for media server.

Following will be the names for media server volumes

For data:

- data-testmedia-media-0
- data-testmedia-media-1
- data-testmedia-media-2
- data-testmedia-media-3
- data-testmedia-media-4

For log:

- logs-testmedia-media-0
- logs-testmedia-media-1
- logs-testmedia-media-2
- logs-testmedia-media-3
- logs-testmedia-media-4

**3** Create required number of Azure disks and save the ID of newly created disk.

For more information, see [Azure Disk - Static](#)

#### 4 Create PVs for each disk and link the PVCs to respective PVs.

To create the PVs, specify the created storage class and diskURI (ID of the disk received in step 3) in the yaml file. The PV must be created using the **claimRef** field and provide PVC name for its corresponding namespace.

For example, if you are creating PV for catalog volume, storage required is 128GB, diskName is **primary\_catalog\_pv** and namespace is **test**. PVC named **catalog-testprimary-primary-0** is linked to this PV when PVC is created in the namespace test.

```
apiVersion: v1
  kind: PersistentVolume
  metadata:
    name: catalog
  spec:
    capacity:
      storage: 128Gi
    accessModes:
      - ReadWriteOnce
    azureDisk:
      kind: Managed
      diskName: primary_catalog_pv
      diskURI:
/subscriptions/3247febe-4e28-467d-a65c-10ca69bcd74b/
resourcegroups/MC_NBU-k8s-network_XXXXXX_eastus/providers/Microsoft.Compute/disks/deepak_s_pv

    claimRef:
      apiVersion: v1
      kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
      name: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
      namespace: test
```



- 5 Create PVC with correct PVC name (step 2), storage class and storage.

For example,

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
  namespace: test
spec:
  storageClassName: "managed-premium-retain"
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 128Gi
```

- 6 Perform step 4 and 5 for all of the following:  
Primary server: Catalog, Data and Logs volume.  
Media server: Logs and Data volume.
- 7 Deploy the Operator.
- 8 Use previously created storage class names for the volumes in primaryServer and mediaServer section in environment CR spec and deploy environment CR.

## (EKS-specific) Allocating static PV for Primary and Media pods

When you want to use a disk with specific performance parameters, you can statically create the PV and PVC. You must allocate static PV and PVC before deploying the NetBackup server for the first time.

## To allocate static PV for Media and Primary pods

### 1 Create storage class in cluster.

See [“How does the Config-Checker utility work”](#) on page 25.

This newly created storage class name is used while creating PV and PVC's and should be mentioned for Catalog, Log, Data volume in the environment CR mediaServer section at the time of deployment.

For more information on creating the storage class, see [Storage class](#).

For example,

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: gp2-reclaim
provisioner: kubernetes.io/aws-ebs
reclaimPolicy: Retain
allowVolumeExpansion: true
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
parameters:
  fsType: ext4
  type: gp2
```

### 2 Calculate number of disks required.

The following persistent volumes are required by Media and Primary pods:

- Catalog, Data and Log volume disk for primary server.
- Data and Log volume disk per replica of media server.

Use the following format to form PVC names.

For primary server:

- catalog-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0
- data-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0
- logs-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_primary>-primary-0

For media server

- data-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media>-media-<media server replica number. Count starts from 0>
- logs-<resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media>-media-<media server replica number. Count starts from 0>

- Example 1** If user wants to deploy a media server with replica count 3. For this scenario, you must create total 8 disks, 8 PV and 8 PVCs.
- Name of the Media PVC assuming resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media is **testmedia**. 6 disks, 6 PV and 6 PVCs for media server.
- Following will be the names for:
- Primary server**
- For logs: logs-testprimary-primary-0
  - For catalog: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
  - For data: data-testprimary-primary-0
- Media server**
- For data:
    - data-testmedia-media-0
    - data-testmedia-media-1
    - data-testmedia-media-2
  - For log:
    - logs-testmedia-media-0
    - logs-testmedia-media-1
    - logs-testmedia-media-2
- Example 2** If user wants to deploy a media server with replica count 5. For this scenario, you must create 12 disks, 12 PV and 12 PVCs
- Names of the Media PVC assuming resourceNamePrefix\_of\_media is **testmedia**. 10 disks, 10 PV and 10 PVCs for media server.
- Following will be the names for primary server volumes
- For data:
- data-testmedia-media-0
  - data-testmedia-media-1
  - data-testmedia-media-2
  - data-testmedia-media-3
  - data-testmedia-media-4
- For log:
- logs-testmedia-media-0
  - logs-testmedia-media-1
  - logs-testmedia-media-2
  - logs-testmedia-media-3
  - logs-testmedia-media-4

- 3 Create the required number of AWS EBS volumes and save the VolumeId of newly created volumes.

For more information on creating EBS volumes, see [EBS volumes](#).

(For Primary Server volumes) Create the required number of EFS. User can use single EFS to mount catalog of primary. For example, VolumeHandle in **PersistentVolume** spec will be as follows:

```
<file_system_id>:/catalog
```

- 4 Create PVs for each disks.

To create the PVs, specify the created storage class and VolumeId (ID of the EBS volumes received in step 3) in the yaml file. The PV must be created using the **claimRef** field and provide PVC name for its corresponding namespace.

For example, if you are creating PV for catalog volume, storage required is 128GB and namespace is **test**. PVC named **catalog-testprimary-primary-0** is linked to this PV when PVC is created in the namespace test.

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: catalog
spec:
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteMany
  awsElasticBlockStore:
    fsType: xfs
    volumeID: aws://us-east-2c/vol-xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
  capacity:
    storage: 128Gi
  persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Retain
  storageClassName: gp2-retain
  volumeMode: Filesystem
  claimRef:
    apiVersion: v1
    kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
    name: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
    namespace: test
```

- 5 Create PVC with correct PVC name (step 2), storage class and storage.

For example,

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: catalog-testprimary-primary-0
  namespace: test
spec:
  storageClassName: gp2-retain
accessModes:
  - ReadWriteMany
resources:
  requests:
    storage: 128Gi
```

- 6 Perform step 4 and 5 for all of the following:  
Primary server: Catalog, Data and Logs volume.  
Media server: Logs and Data volume.
- 7 Deploy the Operator.
- 8 Use previously created storage class names for the volumes in primaryServer and mediaServer section in environment CR spec and deploy environment CR.

# Monitoring MSDP Scaleout

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About MSDP Scaleout status and events](#)
- [Monitoring with Amazon CloudWatch](#)
- [Monitoring with Azure Container insights](#)
- [The Kubernetes resources for MSDP Scaleout and MSDP operator](#)

## About MSDP Scaleout status and events

The MSDP Scaleout CR status includes the readiness state, the storage space utilization (via PersistentVolumeClaim) of each Controller, MDS, and Engine pod.

In the initial configuration of MSDP Scaleout, the readiness state of each pod changes from "false" to "true" in the first few minutes. When the state of all the pods changes to "true", it indicates MSDP Scaleout is ready for use.

You can check the storage space utilization routinely to plan MSDP Scaleout autoscaling before the storage space runs out.

## To check the MSDP Scaleout status and events

### 1 Check the status and the events under the namespace for MSDP Scaleout.

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> describe msdp-scaleout  
<sample-cr-name>
```

### 2 Check the MSDP Scaleout events.

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> get events  
[--sort-by='{.lastTimestamp}']
```

### 3 Check the storage space utilization.

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> get msdp-scaleout <sample-cr-name>  
-o json
```

## Example of the of the status format:

```
kubectl -n sample-cr-namespace get msdp-scaleout sample-cr -o json
```

## AKS:

```
{  
  "controllers": [  
    {  
      "apiVersions": [  
        "1.0"  
      ],  
      "name": "msdp-aks-demo-uss-controller",  
      "nodeName": "aks-nodepool1-25250377-vmss000002",  
      "productVersion": "15.1-0159",  
      "pvc": [  
        {  
          "pvcName": "msdp-aks-demo-uss-controller-log",  
          "stats": {  
            "availableBytes": "10125.98Mi",  
            "capacityBytes": "10230.00Mi",  
            "percentageUsed": "1.02%",  
            "usedBytes": "104.02Mi"  
          }  
        }  
      ],  
      "ready": "True"  
    }  
  ],  
  "engines": [  
    {  

```

```

    "ip": "x.x.x.x",
    "name": "msdppods1.westus2.cloudapp.azure.com",
    "nodeName": "aks-nodepool1-25250377-vmss000003",
    "pvc": [
      {
        "pvcName": "msdppods1.westus2.cloudapp.azure.com-catalog",
        "stats": {
          "availableBytes": "20293.80Mi",
          "capacityBytes": "20470.00Mi",
          "percentageUsed": "0.86%",
          "usedBytes": "176.20Mi"
        }
      },
      {
        "pvcName": "msdppods1.westus2.cloudapp.azure.com-data-0",
        "stats": {
          "availableBytes": "30457.65Mi",
          "capacityBytes": "30705.00Mi",
          "percentageUsed": "0.81%",
          "usedBytes": "247.35Mi"
        }
      }
    ],
    "ready": "True"
  },
  .....

```

**EKS:**

```

# kubectl get -n demo msdp-scaleout msdp-app -o json | jq .status
{
  "controllers": [
    {
      "apiVersions": [
        "1.0"
      ],
      "name": "msdp-app-uss-controller",
      "nodeName": "ip-x-x-x-x.ec2.internal",
      "productVersion": "16.0.1-0035",
      "pvc": [
        {
          "pvcName": "msdp-app-uss-controller-log",
          "stats": {
            "availableBytes": "9878.00Mi",

```



```

        "capacityBytes": "9951.27Mi",
        "percentageUsed": "0.58%",
        "usedBytes": "57.27Mi"
    }
}
],
"ready": "True"
}
],
"engines": [
{
    "ip": "x.x.x.x",
    "name": "ip-x-x-x-x.ec2.internal",
    "nodeName": "ip-x-x-x-x.ec2.internal",
    "pvc": [
        {
            "pvcName": "ip-x-x-x-x.ec2.internal-catalog",
            "stats": {
                "availableBytes": "604539.68Mi",
                "capacityBytes": "604629.16Mi",
                "percentageUsed": "0.01%",
                "usedBytes": "73.48Mi"
            }
        },
        {
            "pvcName": "ip-x-x-x-x.ec2.internal-data-0",
            "stats": {
                "availableBytes": "4160957.62Mi",
                "capacityBytes": "4161107.91Mi",
                "percentageUsed": "0.00%",
                "usedBytes": "134.29Mi"
            }
        }
    ]
},
"ready": "True"
},

```

## Monitoring with Amazon CloudWatch

You can use Amazon CloudWatch to collect Prometheus metrics to monitor pods in MSDP-X cluster.

### To configure Amazon CloudWatch

- 1 Install the CloudWatch agent with Prometheus metrics collection on EKS.  
See [AWS documentation](#).
- 2 Install the CloudWatch agent on EKS clusters. Select the EC2 launch type, and download the template YAML file `Prometheus-eks.yaml`.

### 3 Add the YAML file with the following sample configuration.

```
# create configmap for prometheus cwagent config
apiVersion: v1
data:
  # cwagent json config
  cwagentconfig.json: |
    {
      "logs": {
        "metrics_collected": {
          "prometheus": {
            "prometheus_config_path": "/etc/prometheusconfig/
prometheus.yaml",
            "emf_processor": {
              "metric_declaration": [
                {
                  "source_labels": ["job"],
                  "label_matcher": "^msdpoperator-metrics",
                  "dimensions": [
                    ["ClusterName", "NameSpace"]
                  ],
                  "metric_selectors": [
                    "msdpoperator_reconcile_failed",
                    "msdpoperator_operator_run",
                    "msdpoperator_diskFreeLess5GBEngines_total",
                    "msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine",
                    "msdpoperator_diskFreeLess10GBClusters_total",
                    "msdpoperator_totalDiskFreePercentInCluster",
                    "msdpoperator_diskFreePercentInEngine",
                    "msdpoperator_pvcFreePercentInCluster",
                    "msdpoperator_unhealthyEngines_total",
                    "msdpoperator_createdPods_total"
                  ]
                }
              ]
            }
          }
        },
        "force_flush_interval": 5
      }
    }
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
```

```
name: prometheus-cwagentconfig
namespace: amazon-cloudwatch

---
# create configmap for prometheus scrape config
apiVersion: v1
data:
  # prometheus config
  prometheus.yaml: |
    global:
      scrape_interval: 1m
      scrape_timeout: 10s
      scrape_configs:
        - job_name: 'msdpoperator-metrics'

          scheme: https
          tls_config:
            ca_file: /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/ca.crt
            insecure_skip_verify: true
            bearer_token_file: /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount
              /token

          kubernetes_sd_configs:
            - role: pod

          relabel_configs:
            - source_labels: [__meta_kubernetes_pod_annotation_prometheus_io
              _scrape]
              action: keep
              regex: true
            - source_labels: [__meta_kubernetes_pod_annotation_prometheus_io
              _path]
              action: replace
              target_label: __metrics_path__
              regex: (.+)
            - source_labels: [__address__, __meta_kubernetes_pod_annotation
              prometheus_io_port]
              action: replace
              regex: ([^:]+)(?::\d+)?;(\d+)
              replacement: $1:$2
              target_label: __address__
            - source_labels: [__meta_kubernetes_namespace]
              action: replace
```

```

        target_label: NameSpace
      - source_labels: [__meta_kubernetes_pod_name]
        action: replace
        target_label: PodName

kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: prometheus-config
  namespace: amazon-cloudwatch

```

[Table 10-1](#) lists the Prometheus metrics that MSDP Scaleout supports.

#### 4 Apply the YAML file.

```
Kubectl apply -f Prometheus-eks.yaml
```

The default log groups name is

```
/aws/containerinsights/{cluster_name}/Prometheus.
```

#### 5 Create Amazon CloudWatch alarms.

See [Using Amazon CloudWatch alarms](#) in AWS documentation.

#### 6 In the CloudWatch console, add the related log query. In the navigation pane, select **Log Insights**.

For example, the free space size of the MSDP scaleout cluster engines is lower than 1 GB in past 5 minutes. Select the log group from the drop-down list, and select the time duration 5m on the time line.

Log query:

```

fields @timestamp, @message
| filter msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine <= 100000
| sort @timestamp desc

```

If multiple MSDP scaleout clusters are deployed in the same EKS cluster, use the filter to search the results. For example, search the MSDP engines with the free space size lower than 1GB in the namespace **sample-cr-namespace**.

Log query:

```

fields @timestamp, @message
| filter msdpscalout_ns == "sample-cr-namespace"
| filter msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine <= 100000
| sort @timestamp desc

```

MSDP Scaleout supports the following Prometheus metrics:

**Table 10-1** Supported Prometheus metrics list in MSDP Scaleout

| Metrics                                     | Type    | Filters                   | Description                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| msdpoperator_reconcile_total                | Counter | N/A                       | The total of the reconcile loops msdp-operator run.                                              |
| msdpoperator_reconcile_failed               | Counter | N/A                       | The total of the reconcile loops msdp-operator failed to run.                                    |
| msdpoperator_operator_run                   | Counter | N/A                       | The total of the running operator.                                                               |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeLess5GBEngines_total   | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The checked number of the engines which have free spaces lower than 5GB.                         |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine        | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The free space of current engine in MiBytes.                                                     |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeLess10GBClusters_total | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The checked number of the msdp scaleout applications that have free spaces lower than 10GB.      |
| msdpoperator_totalDiskFreePercentInCluster  | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The percent of the msdp scaleout applications that have free spaces. For example, 0.95 means 95% |
| msdpoperator_diskFreePercentInEngine        | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The percent of the current engines, which have free spaces.                                      |
| msdpoperator_pvcFreePercentInCluster        | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns, component | The percent of the used PVC, which have free spaces.                                             |
| msdpoperator_unhealthyEngines_total         | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns            | The total of unhealthy engines.                                                                  |
| msdpoperator_createdPods_total              | Gauge   | msdpscalout_ns, component | The total of created msdp scaleout pods.                                                         |

## Monitoring with Azure Container insights

You can use Azure Container insights to collect Prometheus metrics to monitor pods in MSDP Scaleout.

## To configure Azure Container insights

- 1 Enable Azure Container insights.  
See [Azure documentation](#).
- 2 Download the template ConfigMap YAML file and save it as `container-azm-ms-agentconfig.yaml`.
- 3 Add the YAML file with the following sample configuration:

```
prometheus-data-collection-settings: |-

[prometheus_data_collection_settings.cluster]
interval = "1m"

fieldpass = ["msdpoperator_reconcile_total",
             "msdpoperator_reconcile_failed",
             "msdpoperator_operator_run",
             "msdpoperator_diskFreeLess5GBEngines_total",
             "msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine",
             "msdpoperator_diskFreeLess10GBClusters_total",
             "msdpoperator_totalDiskFreePercentInCluster",
             "msdpoperator_diskFreePercentInEngine",
             "msdpoperator_pvcFreePercentInCluster",
             "msdpoperator_unhealthyEngines_total",
             "msdpoperator_createdPods_total"]

monitor_kubernetes_pods = true

# Add the namespace of MSDP operator in the follow list.
It's "msdp-operator-system" by default.

monitor_kubernetes_pods_namespaces =
["msdp-operator-system"]
```

[Table 10-2](#) lists the Prometheus metrics that MSDP Scaleout supports.

#### 4 Apply the ConfigMap.

```
kubectl apply -f container-azm-ms-agentconfig.yaml
```

The configuration change takes a few minutes and all omsagent pods in the cluster restart.

The default namespace of prometheus metrics is **prometheus**.

#### 5 Add alert rules for the integrated metrics.

Add related log query, add new alert rule for the selected query, and alert group/action for it.

For example,

If the free space size of the MSDP Scaleout engines is lower than 1 GB in past 5 minutes, alert the users.

Log query:

```
InsightsMetrics

| where Name == "msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine"
| where Namespace == "prometheus"
| where TimeGenerated > ago(5m)
| where Val <= 1000000
| where Val > 0
```

If multiple MSDP Scaleouts are deployed in the same AKS cluster, use the filter to search the results. For example, search the MSDP engines with the free space size lower than 1GB in the namespace **sample-cr-namespace**

Log query:

```
InsightsMetrics

| where Name == "msdpoperator_diskFreeMiBytesInEngine"
| where Namespace == "prometheus"
| where TimeGenerated > ago(5m)
| where Val <= 1000000
| where Val > 0
| extend Tags = parse_json(Tags)
| where Tags.msdpscalout_ns == "sample-cr-namespace"
```

MSDP Scaleout supports the following Prometheus metrics:



**Table 10-2** Supported Prometheus metrics list in MSDP Scaleout

| Metrics                                         | Type    | Filters                                                                | Description                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| msdpoperator_reconcile_total                    | Counter | N/A                                                                    | The total of the reconcile loops msdp-operator run.                                      |
| msdpoperator_reconcile_failed                   | Counter | N/A                                                                    | The total of the reconcile loops msdp-operator failed to run.                            |
| msdpoperator_operator_run                       | Counter | N/A                                                                    | The total of the running operator.                                                       |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeLess<br>5GBEngines_total   | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The checked number of the engines which have free spaces lower than 5GB.                 |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeMi<br>BytesInEngine        | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The free space of current engine in MiBytes.                                             |
| msdpoperator_diskFreeLess<br>10GBClusters_total | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The checked number of the msdp scaleout apps which have free spaces lower than 10GB.     |
| msdpoperator_totalDiskFree<br>PercentInCluster  | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The percent of the msdp scaleout apps that have free spaces. For example, 0.95 means 95% |
| msdpoperator_diskFree<br>PercentInEngine        | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The percent of the current engines, which have free spaces.                              |
| msdpoperator_pvcFree<br>PercentInCluster        | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns,<br>InsightsMetrics.Tags.component | The percent of the used PVC, which have free spaces.                                     |
| msdpoperator_unhealthy<br>Engines_total         | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns                                    | The total of unhealthy engines.                                                          |
| msdpoperator_createdPods<br>_total              | Gauge   | InsightsMetrics.Tags.msdpscalout_ns,<br>InsightsMetrics.Tags.component | The total of created msdp scaleout pods.                                                 |

## The Kubernetes resources for MSDP Scaleout and MSDP operator

Do not change or delete the Kubernetes resources that MSDP deployment has created.

- Run the following command to find all the namespaced resources:

```
kubectl api-resources --verbs=list --namespaced=true -o name |  
xargs -n 1 -i bash -c 'if ! echo {} |grep -q events; then kubectl  
get --show-kind --show-labels --ignore-not-found -n <cr or operator  
namespace> {}; fi'
```

- Run the following command to find commonly used namespace resources:

```
kubectl get pod,svc,deploy,rs,pvc -n <cr or operator namespace>  
-o wide
```

- Run the following command to find the Kubernetes cluster level resources that belong to the CR:

```
kubectl api-resources --verbs=list --namespaced=false -o name |  
xargs -n 1 -i bash -c 'kubectl get --show-kind --show-labels  
--ignore-not-found {} |grep [msdp-operator|<cr-name>]'
```

# Monitoring Snapshot Manager

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview](#)
- [Logs of Snapshot Manager](#)
- [Configuration parameters](#)

## Overview

The status of Snapshot Manager deployment can be verified by using the following command:

```
kubectl describe cpserver -n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

This displays the status of deployment as follows:

| Status  | Description                |
|---------|----------------------------|
| Running | Deployment is in progress. |
| Failed  | Deployment has failed.     |
| Success | Deployment is successful.  |

## Logs of Snapshot Manager

Fluent log collector service collects the logs from various services in Snapshot Manager at one shared storage. To read these services, exec into `flexsnap-fluend-collector pod`.

Run the `kubecttl` command as follows:

```
kubecttl exec -it <flexsnap-fluend-collector pod_name> bash -n  
$ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

You can find the Snapshot Manager log files under `/cloudpoint/logs/` folder.

## Configuration parameters

- Any configuration related parameter that must be added in `/cloudpoint/flexsnap.conf` file can be added in `flexsnap-conf` configmap by editing it as follows:

```
kubecttl edit configmap flexsnap-conf -n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

For example, for changing the log level from info to debug, add the following:

```
[logging]  
level = debug
```

- Any configuration related parameter which needs to be added in `/cloudpoint/openv/netbackup/bp.conf` file can be added in `nbuconf` configmap by editing it as follows:

```
kubecttl edit configmap nbuconf -n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

# Managing the Load Balancer service

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the Load Balancer service](#)
- [Notes for Load Balancer service](#)
- [Opening the ports from the Load Balancer service](#)

## About the Load Balancer service

Key features of the Load Balancer service:

- Load balancer services are created in primary server and media server deployment that allows you to access the NetBackup application from public domains.
- In primary server or media server CR spec, networkLoadBalancer section is used for handling the IP address and DNS name allocation for load balancer services. If **ipList** is provided in CR spec, IP address count must not be less than the count specified in **replica** for media server and for primary server, only one IP address must be mentioned.
- The networkLoadBalancer section can be used to provide static IP address and DNS name allocation to the Load Balancer services.
- **(AKS-specific)**
  - The networkLoadBalancer section can be used to provide static IP address and DNS name allocation to the loadbalancer services. For more information to create and use static loadbalancer, see [Microsoft documentation](#).

Static IP addresses and FQDN if used must be created before being used. Refer the below section:

- **Pre-allocation of static IP address and FQDN from resource group**  
In this case, it is required to provide the network resource group in annotations. This resource group is the resource group of load balancer public IPs that are in the same resource group as the cluster infrastructure (node resource group). This static FQDN and IP address must be valid in case of pod failure or upgrades scenarios as well.

In case user wants to use public load balancer, add **type: Public** in networkLoadBalancer section in primary and media server section in environment CR.

- **Example: In primary CR,**

```
networkLoadBalancer:
  type: Public
  annotations:
    - service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer-
      resource-group:<name of network resource-group>
  ipList:
    - fqdn: primary.eastus.cloudapp.azure.com
      ipAddr: 40.123.45.123
```

#### Media server section in environment CR -

```
networkLoadBalancer:
  annotations:
    - service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer-
      resource-group: "<name of network resource-group>"
  ipList:
    - fqdn: media-1.eastus.cloudapp.azure.com
      ipAddr: 40.123.45.123
    - fqdn: media-2.eastus.cloudapp.azure.com
      ipAddr: 40.123.45.124
```

- **(EKS-specific)**
  - NetBackup supports the network load balancer with AWS Load Balancer scheme as **internet-facing**.
  - FQDN must be created before being used. Refer below sections for different allowed annotations to be used in CR spec.
  - User must add the following annotations:

```
service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: <subnet1
name>
```

In addition to the above annotations, if required user can add more annotations supported by AWS. For more information, see [AWS Load Balancer Controller Annotations](#).

Example: CR spec in primary server,

```
networkLoadBalancer:
type: Private
annotations:
  service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: <subnet1 name>
ipList:
  "10.244.33.27: abc.vxindia.veritas.com"
```

CR spec in media server,

```
networkLoadBalancer:
type: Private
annotations:
  service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: <subnet1 name>
ipList:
  "10.244.33.28: pqr.vxindia.veritas.com"
  "10.244.33.29: xyz.vxindia.veritas.com"
```

The IP address, the subnet provided in ipList and annotations in networkLoadBalancer section in CR spec must belong to same availability zone that of the node group.

---

**Note:** The subnet provided here should be same as the one given in node pool used for primary server and media server.

---

If NetBackup client is outside VPC or to access Web UI from outside VPC, then client CIDR must be added with all NetBackup ports in security group rule of cluster. Run the following command, to obtain the cluster security group:

```
aws eks describe-cluster --name <my-cluster> --query
cluster.resourcesVpcConfig.clusterSecurityGroupId
```

For more information on cluster security group, see [Amazon EKS security group requirements and considerations](#).

Add inbound rule to security group. For more information, see [Add rules to a security group](#).

## (AKS-specific) Preferred annotations

**Table 12-1** Preferred annotations

| Annotations                                                                | Value                      | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>service.beta.kubernetes.io/<br/>azure-load-balancer-internal</i>        | true or false              | Specify whether the load balancer should be internal.<br><br>Added by default when type is selected as <b>Private</b> in load balancer service annotations. |
| <i>service.beta.kubernetes.io/<br/>azure-load-balancer-internal-subnet</i> | Name of the subnet         | Specify which subnet the internal load balancer should be bound to.                                                                                         |
| <i>service.beta.kubernetes.io/<br/>azure-load-balancer-resource-group</i>  | Name of the resource group | Specify the resource group of load balancer public IPs that are not in the same resource group as the cluster infrastructure (node resource group).         |

## Default ports used in the Load Balancer service

- Primary server:
  - 1556  
Used as bidirectional port. Primary server to/from media servers and primary server to/from client require this TCP port for communication.
  - 443  
Used to inbound to vnet proxy tunnel on the primary server. Also, this is used Nutanix workload, communication from primary server to the deduplication media server.
  - 13781  
The MQBroker is listening on TCP port 13781. NetBackup client hosts - typically located behind a NAT gateway - be able to connect to the message queue broker (MQBroker) on the primary server.
  - 13724  
This port is required as a fall-back option when a legacy service cannot be reached through PBX and is required when using the Resilient Network feature.
  - Port 22  
Used by NetBackup IT Analytics data collector for data collection.
- Media server:



- 1556  
Used as bidirectional port. Primary server to/from media servers and primary server to/from client require this TCP port for communication.
- 13724  
Used as a fall-back option when a legacy service cannot be reached through PBX and when using the Resilient Network feature.
- Snapshot Manager server:
  - 443  
The Snapshot Manager user interface uses this port as the default HTTPS port.
  - 5671  
The Snapshot Manager RabbitMQ server uses this port for internal service communications. This port must be open to support multiple agents, extensions, backup from snapshot, and restore from backup jobs.
  - (EKS-specific) 2049  
It is used for Amazon EFS access.  
For more information, see [Source ports for working with EFS](#).

---

**Note:** Add the NFS rule that allows traffic on port 2049 directly to the cluster security group. The security group attached to EFS must also allow traffic from port 2049.

---

## Notes for Load Balancer service

Note the following points:

- After deployment of primary server or media server, updating the DNS name, IP address and subnet through CR is not allowed.
- If mistakenly user has added wrong values:
  - User wants to update IP address and subnet, you must delete the CR and update the CR yaml and reapply it.
  - User wants to update the DNS name, you must delete the respective CR and delete the respective PVC and PV as well.

---

**Note:** Be cautious while performing this step, this may lead to data loss.

---

- Before using the DNS and its respective IP address in CR yaml, you can verify the IP address and its DNS resolution using `nslookup`.
- In case of media server scaleout, ensure that the number of IP addresses mentioned in `IPList` in `networkLoadBalancer` section matches the replica count.
- If `nslookup` is done for loadbalancer IP inside the container, it returns the DNS in the form of `<svc name>.<namespace_name>.svc.cluster.local`. This is Kubernetes behavior. Outside the pod, the loadbalancer service IP address is resolved to the configured DNS. The `nbbptestconnection` command inside the pods can provide a mismatch in DNS names, which can be ignored.

## Opening the ports from the Load Balancer service

In this deployment, most of the required ports are already opened from the NetBackup primary and media server load balancer services by default.

- If you want to use a specific workload and that needs specific ports, you must add those ports in the port specification of the load balancer service.
- In case of media server, you must add custom ports in the load balancer service of all the replicas. In case of scaling up the media server, user needs to explicitly add newly added custom ports in respective newly created load balancer services.
- In case custom ports are added in the load balancer service and the same load balancer service is deleted or created again, you must add respective custom ports again in the load balancer service specification.

For all three scenarios, perform the steps given in this section.

### To open the ports from the Load Balancer service

- 1 Run the `kubectl get service -n <namespace>` command.

This command lists all the services available in given namespace.

- 2 Edit the required primary or media load balancer service using `kubectl edit service <service-name> -n <namespace>` command.

For example:

- For primary server load balancer service:
  - Service name starts with **Name** of primary server like `<Name>-primary`. Edit the service with the `kubectl edit service <Name>-primary -n <namespace>` command.
- For media server load balancer service:

- Each replica of media server has its own load balancer service with name **<Name>-media-<ordinal number>**. For example, replica 2 of media server has a load balancer service with name **<Name>-media-1**.
- You must modify service for specific replica with the `kubectl edit service <Name>-media-<replica-ordinal number> -n <namespace>` command.

---

**Note:** The load balancer service with name **Name** used in primary sever and media server specification must be unique.

---

- 3 Add entry for new port in ports array in specification field of the service. For example, if user want to add 111 port, then add the following entry in ports array in specification field.

```
name: custom-111

port: 111

protocol: TCP

targetPort: 111
```

- 4 Save the changes.

The service is updated and the new port is listed in ports list of the respective service when you run the `kubectl get service -n <namespace>` command.

# Managing MSDP Scaleout

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Adding MSDP engines](#)
- [Adding data volumes](#)
- [Expanding existing data or catalog volumes](#)
- [MSDP Scaleout scaling recommendations](#)
- [MSDP Cloud backup and disaster recovery](#)
- [MSDP multi-domain support](#)
- [Configuring Auto Image Replication](#)
- [About MSDP Scaleout logging and troubleshooting](#)

## Adding MSDP engines

You can add new MSDP engines by updating the CR. You can add maximum 16 MSDP engines.

Prerequisites:

- Allocate new static IP/FQDN pairs in the same node resource group.
- The node number must not be less than the MSDP Scaleout size that you plan to change.
- CR YAML file of MSDP Scaleout

**To add the MSDP engines by updating the CR YAML file**

- 1 Open the CR YAML file to edit.
- 2 Append the new IP/FQDN pairs in the **spec.serviceIPFQDNs** field.

- 3 Update the **spec.size** field to increase the cluster size accordingly.
- 4 Apply new CR YAML to update the CR in the Kubernetes environment.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

#### To add the MSDP engines using the kubectl command directly

- ◆ Run the following command to append the IP/FQDN pairs in the **spec.serviceIPFQDNs** field and increase the cluster size in **spec.size** field.

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> edit msdp-scaleout <your-cr-name>
[-o json | yaml]
```

The MSDP Scaleout services are not interrupted when MSDP engines are added.

## Adding data volumes

You can add the data volumes by updating the CR.

#### To add the data volumes by updating the CR YAML file

- 1 Open the CR YAML file to edit.
- 2 Append the new data volume specifications in the **spec.dataVolumes** field.
- 3 Apply new CR YAML to update the CR in the Kubernetes environment.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

#### To add the MSDP engine using the kubectl command directly

- ◆ Run the following command to append new data volume specifications in the **spec.dataVolumes** field.

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> edit msdp-scaleout <your-cr-name>
[-o json | yaml]
```

In the MSDP engine pod, the first data volume is mounted on

/msdp/data/dp1/pdvol. Nth data volume is mounted on

/msdp/data/dp1/\${N-1}pdvol. For example, 2nd data volume is mounted on

/msdp/data/dp1/1pdvol.

Each MSDP engine can support up to 16 data volumes.

It is recommended that you use the same data volume size if you add multiple volumes.

---

**Note:** Due to some Kubernetes restrictions, MSDP operator restarts the engine pods for attaching the existing and new volumes, which can cause the short downtime of the services.

---

# Expanding existing data or catalog volumes

You can expand the existing data or catalog volumes by updating the CR.

## To expand the data or catalog volumes by updating the CR YAML file

- 1 Open the CR YAML file to edit.
- 2 Increase the requested storage size in the **spec.dataVolumes** field or in the **spec.catalogVolume** field.
- 3 Apply new CR YAML to update the CR in the Kubernetes environment.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

## To expand the data or catalog volumes using the kubectl command directly

- ◆ Run the following command to increase the requested storage size in the **spec.dataVolumes** field or in the **spec.catalogVolume** field..

```
kubectl -n <sample-namespace> edit msdpyscaleout <your-cr-name>  
[-o json | yaml]
```

Sometimes Azure disk or Amazon EBS CSI driver may not respond the volume expansion request promptly. In this case, the operator retries the request by adding 1 byte to the requested volume size to trigger the volume expansion again. If it is successful, the actual volume capacity could be slightly larger than the requested size.

Due to the limitation of Azure disk or Amazon CSI storage driver, the engine pods need to be restarted for resizing the existing volumes. This can cause the short downtime of the services.

MSDP Scaleout does not support the following:

- Cannot shrink the volume size.
- Cannot change the existing data volumes other than for storage expansion.
- Cannot expand the log volume size. You can do it manually. See [“Manual storage expansion”](#) on page 175.
- Cannot expand the data volume size for MDS pods. You can do it manually. See [“Manual storage expansion”](#) on page 175.

## Recommendation for media server volume expansion

All media server pods are terminated if media server volumes are expanded. Ensure that no jobs are running on media servers when volume must be expanded.

During media server volume expansion, it is recommended that the value of **replicas** must be equal to or greater than the media servers added in primary server. Navigate

to **Storage > Media servers** to check the number of media servers added in primary server on Web UI.

Primary server is also a media server that must not be considered. External media servers must not be considered.

During volume expansion, if media servers added in primary server are more than the value of **replicas** (that is, user has reduced the value for replicas field) then the volumes of provided **replicas** value would be expanded. If the value for **replicas** is increased again irrespective of volume expansion and if media server must be scaled up, then all the media server pods would be terminated and would be re-deployed with all PVCs expanded. This might fail the backup jobs as media servers may be terminated.

## Manual storage expansion

You also can manually expand storage size by expanding PVC size.

### To expand the data or catalog volumes

- 1 Open the CR YAML file to edit.
- 2 Configure `spec.paused: true`.
- 3 Apply new CR YAML to stop MSDP operator from reconciling and repairing the pods automatically.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

- 4 Patch the corresponding PVCs.

```
kubectl patch pvc <pvc-name> --type merge --patch '{"spec":  
{"resources": {"requests": {"storage": "<requested-size>"}}}'  
-n <sample-namespace>
```

- 5 Specify `spec.paused: false` in the CR.
- 6 Apply new CR YAML to recover MSDP operator to continue to reconcile and repair the pods automatically.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

---

**Note:** If you add new MSDP Engines later, the new Engines will respect the CR specification only. Your manual changes would not be respected by the new Engines.

---

## MSDP Scaleout scaling recommendations

Following are the scaling recommendations for the MSDP Scaleout:

- Allocate the data volumes of the similar sizes for MSDP to have better load balancing performance.
- Each data volume size is more than 4 TB.
- Have multiple data volumes for each engine to gain better throughput.
- Split a bigger backup policy to smaller ones  
In most cases, one backup job goes to one MSDP engine at the same time even if multistream is enabled for the backup policy. If the current MSDP engine, which is taking a backup job hits the high space watermark, the following backup data would be sent to a second MSDP engine. If the backup data is too big for up to 2 MSDP engines to persist, the backup job fails. When more MSDP engines are added, the backup jobs may not be evenly balanced on each MSDP engine at the first a few hours or days. If the situation keeps longer beyond your expectation, consider to re-plan the backup policies, by splitting a bigger backup policy to two smaller ones, to help MSDP Scaleout to balance the new backup jobs more faster.
- After scaling up, the memory and CPU of the existing node pool may not meet the performance requirements anymore. In this case, you can add more memory and CPU by upgrading to the higher instance type to improve the existing node pool performance or create another node pool with higher instance type and update the node-selector for the CR accordingly. If you create another node pool, the new node-selector does not take effect until you manually delete the pods and deployments from the old node pool, or delete the old node pool directly to have the pods re-scheduled to the new node pool.
- Ensure that each AKS or EKS node supports mounting the number of data volumes plus 5 of the data disks.  
For example, if you have 16 data volumes for each engine, then each your AKS or EKS node should support mounting at least 21 data disks. The additional 5 data disks are for the potential MDS pod, Controller pod or MSDP operator pod to run on the same node with MSDP engine.

## MSDP Cloud backup and disaster recovery

For information about MSDP cloud backup and disaster recovery, see MSDP Cloud section of the *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

---

**Note:** In case of disaster recovery of NetBackup environment (that is, primary, media and MSDP), perform the primary catalog recovery first and then proceed with MSDP disaster recovery steps. See [“Backing up a catalog”](#) on page 196.

---



## About the reserved storage space

About 1 TB storage space is reserved by default on each MSDP engine for each cloud LSU.

The 1 TB storage space is selected from one of the data volumes of every engine. It requires each engine at least has one data volume, which has more than 1 TB available storage space, when a cloud LSU is to be configured. Otherwise, the configuration of the cloud LSU fails.

## Cloud LSU disaster recovery

### Scenario 1: MSDP Scaleout and its data is lost and the NetBackup primary server remains unchanged and works well

- 1 Redeploy MSDP Scaleout on a cluster by using the same CR parameters and NetBackup re-issue token.
- 2 When MSDP Scaleout is up and running, re-use the cloud LSU on NetBackup primary server.

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbdevconfig -setconfig  
-storage_server <STORAGESERVERNAME> -stype PureDisk -configlist  
<configuration file>
```

Credentials, bucket name, and sub bucket name must be the same as the recovered Cloud LSU configuration in the previous MSDP Scaleout deployment.

Configuration file template:

```
V7.5 "operation" "reuse-lsu-cloud" string  
V7.5 "lsuName" "LSUNAME" string  
V7.5 "cmsCredName" "XXX" string  
V7.5 "lsuCloudAlias" "<STORAGESERVERNAME_LSuname>" string  
V7.5 "lsuCloudBucketName" "XXX" string  
V7.5 "lsuCloudBucketSubName" "XXX" string  
V7.5 "lsuKmsServerName" "XXX" string
```

If the LSU cloud alias does not exist, you can use the following command to add it.

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/csconfig cldinstance -as -in  
<instance-name> -sts <storage-server-name> -lsu_name <lsu-name>
```

---

**Note:** For Veritas Alta Recovery Vault Azure storage, the `cmsCredName` is a credential name and `cmsCredName` can be any string. Add recovery vault credential in the CMS using the NetBackup web UI and provide the credential name for `cmsCredName`. For more information, see *About Veritas Alta Recovery Vault Azure* topic in *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

---

- 3 On the first MSDP Engine of MSDP Scaleout, run the following command for each cloud LSU:

```
sudo -E -u msdpdsv /usr/opensv/pdde/pdcr/bin/cacontrol --catalog  
cloudldr <LSUNAME>
```

**4 Restart the MSDP services in the MSDP Scaleout.**

Option 1: Manually delete all the MSDP engine pods.

```
kubect1 delete pod <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace>
```

Option 2: Stop MSDP services in each MSDP engine pod. MSDP service starts automatically.

```
kubect1 exec <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace> -c  
uss-engine -- /usr/opencv/pdde/pdconfigure/pdde stop
```

**5 This is an optional step and applicable to AKS only.**

If MSDP S3 service is configured, restart MSDP S3 service after MSDP services are restarted.

```
kubect1 exec <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace> -c  
uss-engine -- systemctl restart pdde-s3srv
```

## Scenario 2: MSDP Scaleout and its data is lost and the NetBackup primary server was destroyed and is re-installed

- 1 Redeploy MSDP Scaleout on a cluster by using the same CR parameters and new NetBackup token.
- 2 When MSDP Scaleout is up and running, reuse the cloud LSU on NetBackup primary server.

```
/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbdevconfig -setconfig
-storage_server <STORAGESERVERNAME> -stype PureDisk -configlist
<configuration file>
```

Credentials, bucket name, and sub bucket name must be the same as the recovered Cloud LSU configuration in previous MSDP Scaleout deployment.

Configuration file template:

```
V7.5 "operation" "reuse-lsu-cloud" string
V7.5 "lsuName" "LSUNAME" string
V7.5 "cmsCredName" "XXX" string
V7.5 "lsuCloudAlias" "<STORAGESERVERNAME_LSUNAME>" string
V7.5 "lsuCloudBucketName" "XXX" string
V7.5 "lsuCloudBucketSubName" "XXX" string
V7.5 "lsuKmsServerName" "XXX" string
```

If KMS is enabled, setup KMS server and import the KMS keys.

If the LSU cloud alias does not exist, you can use the following command to add it.

```
/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/csconfig cldinstance -as -in
<instance-name> -sts <storage-server-name> -lsu_name <lsu-name>
```

---

**Note:** For Veritas Alta Recovery Vault Azure storage, the `cmsCredName` is a credential name and `cmsCredName` can be any string. Add recovery vault credential in the CMS using the NetBackup web UI and provide the credential name for `cmsCredName`. For more information, see *About Veritas Alta Recovery Vault Azure* topic in *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

---

- 3 On the first MSDP Engine of MSDP Scaleout, run the following command for each cloud LSU:

```
sudo -E -u msdpvc /usr/openv/pdde/pdcr/bin/cacontrol --catalog
cloudldr <LSUNAME>
```

**4 Restart the MSDP services in the MSDP Scaleout.**

Option 1: Manually delete all the MSDP engine pods.

```
kubect1 delete <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace>
```

Option 2: Stop MSDP services in each MSDP engine pod.

```
kubect1 exec <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace> -c  
uss-engine -- /usr/opensv/pdde/pdconfigure/pdde stop
```

**5 This is an optional step and applicable to AKS only.**

If MSDP S3 service is configured, restart MSDP S3 service after MSDP services are restarted.

```
kubect1 exec <sample-engine-pod> -n <sample-cr-namespace> -c  
uss-engine -- systemctl restart pdde-s3srv
```

**6 Create disk pool for the cloud LSU on NetBackup server.**

**7 Do two-phase image importing.**

See the *NetBackup Administrator's Guide, Volume I*

For information about other DR scenarios, see *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

## Recovering AKS MSDP S3 IAM configurations from cloud LSU

If MSDP S3 is enabled in AKS, you can recover the MSDP S3 IAM configurations from the cloud LSU that is recovered from the disaster.

### To recover the MSDP S3 IAM configurations from the cloud LSU

- ◆ Run the following command.

```
$ kubectl exec -it <first-MSDP-engine-FQDN> -n <sample-namespace>  
-c uss-engine -- /usr/opensv/pdde/vxs3/cfg/script/s3srv_config.sh  
--recover-iam-config <LSU name>
```

The command displays the IAM configurations in the cloud LSU and current IAM configurations.

The following warning appears:

```
WARNING: This operation overwrites current IAM configurations  
with the IAM configurations in cloud LSU.
```

To overwrite the current IAM configurations, type the following and press **Enter**.

```
overwrite-with-<cloud_LSU_name>
```

---

**Note:** Do not run `/usr/opensv/pdde/vxs3/cfg/script/s3srv_config.sh --reset-iam-root` command before this command. It overwrites the IAM configurations in the cloud LSU.

---

## MSDP multi-domain support

An MSDP storage server is configured in a NetBackup media server. The NetBackup media servers and clients in the NetBackup domain can use this storage server. By default, the NetBackup media servers and clients cannot directly use an MSDP storage server from another NetBackup domain. For example, NetBackup media servers or clients cannot backup data to an MSDP storage server from another NetBackup domain.

To use an MSDP storage server from another NetBackup domain, the MSDP storage server must have multiple MSDP users. Then NetBackup media servers or clients can use the MSDP storage server from another NetBackup domain by using a different MSDP user. Multiple NetBackup domains can use the same MSDP storage server but each NetBackup domain must use a different MSDP user to access that MSDP storage server.

For more information, See *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

When you add a new MSDP user, the command `spauserv` must be executed in the first MSDP engine of MSDP Scaleout, not on any of the NetBackup servers.

Ensure that you run MSDP commands with non-root user **msdp svc** after logging into an engine pod.

For example, `sudo -E -u msdpsvc /usr/opensv/pdde/pdcr/bin/spauser`

## Configuring Auto Image Replication

The backups that are generated in one NetBackup domain can be replicated to storage in one or more target NetBackup domains. This process is referred to as Auto Image Replication (A.I.R.).

You can configure Auto Image Replication in NetBackup, which uses MSDP Scaleout storage servers.

### To configure Auto Image Replication

- 1 Sign in to the NetBackup web UI on both the replication source and the target domain.
- 2 For the replication source and the target domain, add the other NetBackup primary server as the trusted primary server.

For more information, see the *NetBackup Web UI Administrator's Guide*.

- 3 For the replication source domain, get the MSDP\_SERVER name from the NetBackup web UI.

Navigate to **Storage > Disk storage**. Then click the **Storage servers** tab.

- 4 Add MSDP\_SERVER in the primary server of replication target domain. Log in to the target primary server and run the following command:

```
echo "MSDP_SERVER = <Source MSDP server name>" >>  
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf
```

- 5 Get the token from the target domain NetBackup web UI.

Navigate to **Security > Tokens**. Enter the token name and other required details. Click **Create**.

For more information, see the *NetBackup Web UI Administrator's Guide*.

- 6 Add replication targets for the disk pool in the replication source domain.

Open **Storage > Disk storage**. Then click the **Storage servers** tab.

On the **Disk pools** tab, click on the disk pool link.

Click **Add** to add the replication target.

- 7 In the **Add replication targets** page:
  - Select the replication target primary server.
  - Provide the target domain token.
  - Select the target volume.

- Provide the target storage credentials.

Click **Add**.

## About MSDP Scaleout logging and troubleshooting

- AKS troubleshooting  
See [AKS troubleshooting](#) page of *Azure documentation*.
- EKS troubleshooting  
See [Amazon EKS troubleshooting](#) page of the *AWS documentation*.
- Logs and core dumps files in MSDP Scaleout  
MSDP Operator, Controller, and MDS pod logs are stored in `/log` location of the pods.
- Collect the logs and inspection information  
You can collect the logs and inspection information for MSDP Scaleout for troubleshooting purpose.  
See [“Collecting the logs and the inspection information”](#) on page 184.

## Collecting the logs and the inspection information

You can collect the logs and inspection information for MSDP Scaleout for troubleshooting purpose.

Run the command `kubectl msdp collect-logs`

For example, `kubectl msdp collect-logs -o <output path> [-n <MSDP operator namespace>] [-c <MSDP applications namespace(s)>]`

**Table 13-1** collect-logs command options

| Option | Description                                                                                                                         |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -c     | Comma-separated namespaces of MSDP applications.<br><b>Note:</b> If not specified, it collects MSDP applications of all namespaces. |



**Table 13-1** collect-logs command options (*continued*)

| Option | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -f     | <p>Output format of logs/core files/MSDP history files.</p> <p>Available options:</p> <p>targz: Copy logs/core files/MSDP history files from containers and compress them by tar/gzip.</p> <p>raw: Copy logs/core files/MSDP history files from containers as same format in the containers.</p> <p>Default value: targz</p> |
| -n     | <p>Namespace of MSDP operator.</p> <p>Default value: msdp-operator-system</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| -o     | Output path of the log file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

# Managing PostgreSQL DBaaS

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Changing database server password in DBaaS](#)
- [Updating database certificate in DBaaS](#)
- [Disabling non-SSL access to remote DBaaS on Azure](#)

## Changing database server password in DBaaS

### AKS-specific

- 1 Launch an Azure CLI pod into the AKS cluster using the following command:

```
$ kubectl run az-cli --image=mcr.microsoft.com/azure-cli --command  
sleep infinity
```

---

**Note:** Access to Azure Key Vault is restricted to specific subnets. Passwords stored in Azure Key Vault can be easily updated from a pod running in AKS.

---

- 2 Exec into the Azure CLI pod as follows:

```
$ kubectl exec -it az-cli -- /bin/ash
```

- 3 From Azure CLI pod, log into Azure account:

```
$ az login --scope https://graph.microsoft.com//.default
```

- 4 (Optional) Create a key vault policy to allow the current user to retrieve the database credential.

Obtain the name of your resource group, key vault and ID of the current user by using the following respective commands:

- Resource group name:

```
$ RESOURCE_GROUP=<resource_group_name>
```

- Key vault name:

```
$ KEY_VAULT_NAME=$(az keyvault list --resource-group  
$RESOURCE_GROUP --resource-type vault | jq -r '[][.name]')
```

- Current user ID name:

```
$ USER_ID=$(az account show | jq -r '.user.name')
```

Create a key vault access policy as follows:

```
$ az keyvault set-policy -n $KEY_VAULT_NAME --upn $USER_ID  
--resource-group $RESOURCE_GROUP --secret-permissions all
```

**5** Obtain the login name for the key vault (DBADMINUSER):

```
$ DBADMINUSER=$(az keyvault secret show --vault-name  
$KEY_VAULT_NAME --name dbadminlogin | jq -r .value)
```

**6** Obtain the password for the key vault (OLD\_DBADMINPASSWORD):

```
$ OLD_DBADMINPASSWORD=$(az keyvault secret show --vault-name  
$KEY_VAULT_NAME --name dbadminpassword | jq -r .value)
```

**7** Set the new password as follows:

Before setting the new password ensure that you know your database server name or obtain it by using the following command:

```
$ DBSERVER=$(az postgres flexible-server list --resource-group  
$RESOURCE_GROUP | jq -r '[][.name]')
```

Use the following command to set the new password:

```
$ az postgres flexible-server execute -p $OLD_DBADMINPASSWORD -u  
$DBADMINUSER -n $DBSERVER -d postgres -q "ALTER USER \"nbdbadmin\"  
WITH PASSWORD '<new_password>';"
```

---

**Note:** To install `rdbsms-connect` extension, ensure that you select the Y option.

---

- 8** Use the following command to verify if the password is using the correct encryption method (SCRAM-SHA-256):

```
$ az postgres flexible-server execute -p "<new_password>" -u
$DBADMINUSER -n $DBSERVER -d postgres -q "SELECT * from
azure_roles_authtype();"

```

```
+-----+-----+
| rolename           | authtype |
+-----+-----+
| azuresu            | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_database_owner  | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_read_all_data   | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_write_all_data  | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_monitor         | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_read_all_settings | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_read_all_stats  | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_stat_scan_tables | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_read_server_files | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_write_server_files | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_execute_server_program | NOLOGIN  |
| pg_signal_backend  | NOLOGIN  |
| azure_pg_admin     | NOLOGIN  |
| replication        | NOLOGIN  |
| nbdbadmin          | SCRAM-256 |
+-----+-----+

SELECT 15
Time: 0.009s

```

- 9** Store the updated password in key vault:

```
$ az keyvault secret set --vault-name $KEY_VAULT_NAME --name
dbadminpassword --value "<new_password>"

```

- 10** (Optional) Delete the key vault access policy created in step 4 above:

```
$ az keyvault delete-policy -n $KEYVAULT --upn $USER_ID

```

- 11** Exit from the azure CLI pod:

```
$ exit

```

- 12** Delete the az CLI pod:

```
$ kubectl delete pod az-cli

```

- 13** (Applicable only for an existing cloudscale deployment) Restart the primary pod:

```
$ kubectl rollout restart "statefulset/${PRIMARY}" --namespace
"${NAMESPACE}"
```

In the above command,

- NAMESPACE is the namespace containing your NetBackup deployment
- PRIMARY is the name of primary pod's stateful set

Use the following command to obtain NAMESPACE and PRIMARY:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace "${NAMESPACE}" primaryserver -o
jsonpath='{.items[0].status.attributes.resourceName}'
```

### EKS-specific

- 1 Use lambda function to change the password.

LAMBDA\_ARN is the ARN of the password changing lambda function. This can be obtained from the lambda function page on AWS console.

NEW\_PASSWORD is the new password to be used.

```
$ aws lambda invoke --function-name $LAMBDA_ARN \
--cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out --payload
'{"password":"$NEW_PASSWORD"}' \ response_file
```

- 2 Wait for database to be available.

Obtain the POSTGRESQL\_ID (database identifier) of your RDS Postgres database from the RDS database page of the AWS console, using the following command:

```
$ aws rds wait db-instance-available --db-instance-identifier
$POSTGRESQL_ID
```

- 3 Restart the primary pod:

```
$ kubectl rollout restart "statefulset/${PRIMARY}" --namespace
"${NAMESPACE}"
```

In the above command,

- NAMESPACE is the namespace containing your NetBackup deployment
- PRIMARY is the name of primary pod's stateful set

Use the following command to obtain NAMESPACE and PRIMARY:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace "${NAMESPACE}" primaryserver -o
jsonpath='{.items[0].status.attributes.resourceName}'
```

# Updating database certificate in DBaaS

## AKS-specific

- 1 Launch an Azure CLI pod into the AKS cluster using the following command:

```
$ kubectl run az-cli --image=mcr.microsoft.com/azure-cli --command  
sleep infinity
```

---

**Note:** Access to Azure Key Vault is restricted to specific subnets. Passwords stored in Azure Key Vault can be easily updated from a pod running in AKS.

---

- 2 Exec into the Azure CLI pod as follows:

```
$ kubectl exec -it az-cli -- /bin/ash
```

- 3 From Azure CLI pod, log into Azure account:

```
$ az login --scope https://graph.microsoft.com//.default
```

- 4 (Optional) Create a key vault policy to allow the current user to retrieve the database credential.

Obtain the name of your resource group, key vault and ID of the current user by using the following respective commands:

- Resource group name:

```
$ RESOURCE_GROUP=<resource_group_name>
```

- Key vault name:

```
$ KEY_VAULT_NAME=$(az keyvault list --resource-group  
$RESOURCE_GROUP --resource-type vault | jq -r '[][.name]')
```

- Current user ID name:

```
$ USER_ID=$(az account show | jq -r '.user.name')
```

Create a key vault access policy as follows:

```
$ az keyvault set-policy -n $KEY_VAULT_NAME --upn $USER_ID  
--resource-group $RESOURCE_GROUP --secret-permissions all
```

**5** Store the updated certificate in key vault as follows:

```
$
DB_CERT_URL='https://cacerts.digicert.com/DigiCertGlobalRootCA.crt.pem'

$ DB_CERT_VALUE=$(curl -L "${DB_CERT_URL}" -s | awk 'NF {sub(/\r/,
""); printf "%s\\n",$0;}')

$ az keyvault secret set --vault-name $KEY_VAULT_NAME --name
dbcertpem --value "$DB_CERT_VALUE"
```

**6** (Optional) Delete the key vault access policy created in step 4 above:

```
$ az keyvault delete-policy -n $KEYVAULT --upn $USER_ID
```

**7** Exit from the azure CLI pod:

```
$ exit
```

**8** Delete the az CLI pod:

```
$ kubectl delete pod az-cli
```

**9** *(Applicable only for an existing cloudscale deployment)* Restart the primary pod:

```
$ kubectl rollout restart "statefulset/${PRIMARY}" --namespace
"${NAMESPACE}"
```

In the above command,

- NAMESPACE is the namespace containing your NetBackup deployment
- PRIMARY is the name of primary pod's stateful set

Use the following command to obtain NAMESPACE and PRIMARY:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace "${NAMESPACE}" primaryserver -o
jsonpath='{.items[0].status.attributes.resourceName}'
```

## EKS-specific

### 1 Obtain the validity of AWS certificate as follows:

```
$ wget  
https://truststore.pki.rds.amazonaws.com/us-east-1/us-east-1-bundle.pem  
  
$ openssl x509 -text -in ./us-east-1-bundle.pem
```

For example the certificate details are displayed as follows:

Certificate:

Data:

Version: 3 (0x2)

Serial Number:

c7:34:67:36:92:50:ae:75

Signature Algorithm: sha256WithRSAEncryption

Issuer: C=US, L=Seattle, ST=Washington, O=Amazon Web Services,  
Inc., OU=Amazon RDS, CN=Amazon RDS Root 2019 CA

Validity

Not Before: Aug 22 17:08:50 2019 GMT

Not After : Aug 22 17:08:50 2024 GMT

Subject: C=US, L=Seattle, ST=Washington, O=Amazon Web  
Services, Inc., OU=Amazon RDS, CN=Amazon RDS Root 2019 CA...



## 2 Use lambda function to update the certificate.

LAMBDA\_ARN is the ARN of the password changing lambda function. This can be obtained from the lambda function page on AWS console.

```
REGION=$(aws configure get region || true)
DB_CERT_URL=https://truststore.pki.rds.amazonaws.com/${REGION}/${REGION}-bundle.pem
DB_PROXY_CERT_URL=https://www.amazontrust.com/repository/AmazonRootCA1.pem

DB_CERT_VALUE=$(curl -L "${DB_CERT_URL}" -s | awk 'NF {sub(/\r/,
  ""); printf "%s\\n",$0;}')
DB_PROXY_CERT_VALUE=$(curl -L "${DB_PROXY_CERT_URL}" -s | awk 'NF
  {sub(/\r/, ""); printf "%s\\n",$0;}')
DB_CUM_CERT_VALUE="${DB_CERT_VALUE}${DB_PROXY_CERT_VALUE}"

tmp_file=$(mktemp /tmp/dbcert.XXXXXX.json)

aws lambda invoke \
  --function-name "$LAMBDA_ARN" \
  --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
  --payload "{\"dbcertpem\": \"${DB_CUM_CERT_VALUE}\"}" \
  $tmp_file > /dev/null 2>&1
```

## 3 Restart the primary pod:

```
$ kubectl rollout restart "statefulset/${PRIMARY}" --namespace
"${NAMESPACE}"
```

In the above command,

- NAMESPACE is the namespace containing your NetBackup deployment
- PRIMARY is the name of primary pod's stateful set

Use the following command to obtain NAMESPACE and PRIMARY:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace "${NAMESPACE}" primaryserver -o
jsonpath='{.items[0].status.attributes.resourceName}'
```

# Disabling non-SSL access to remote DBaaS on Azure

## Before you begin

- Cloudscale PostgreSQL clients must be FIPS compliant.

- PostgreSQL clients require **SCRAM-SHA-256** password authentication.

---

**Note:** Microsoft Azure limitation: Remote PostgreSQL on Azure defaults to **MD5** instead of **SCRAM-SHA-256** password authentication at the time of creation.

---

To use **SCRAM-SHA-256** password authentication, the PostgreSQL clients must connect to the database server with SSL and re-encrypt the password using the following procedure. This switches the database server to use **SCRAM-SHA-256** password authentication.

### Manually disabling the non-SSL access to remote PostgreSQL on Azure

- 1 Launch an Azure CLI pod into the AKS cluster using the following command:

```
$ kubectl run az-cli --image=mcr.microsoft.com/azure-cli --command
sleep infinity
```

- 2 Exec into the Azure CLI pod as follows:

```
$ kubectl exec -it az-cli -- /bin/ash
```

- 3 From Azure CLI pod, log into Azure account:

```
$ az login --scope https://graph.microsoft.com//.default
```

- 4 (Optional) Create a key vault policy to allow the current user to retrieve the database credential.

Obtain the name of your resource group, key vault and ID of the current user by using the following respective commands:

- Resource group name:

```
$ RESOURCE_GROUP=<resource_group_name>
```

- Key vault name:

```
$ az keyvault list --resource-group $RESOURCE_GROUP
--resource-type vault | jq -r '[][.name']
```

- Current user ID name:

```
$ az account show | jq -r '.user.name'
```

Create a key vault access policy as follows:

```
$ az keyvault set-policy -n $KEY_VAULT_NAME --upn $USER_ID
--resource-group $RESOURCE_GROUP --secret-permissions get
```

- 5 Obtain the login name for the key vault (DBADMINUSER):

```
$ DBADMINUSER=$(az keyvault secret show --vault-name
$KEY_VAULT_NAME --name dbadminlogin | jq -r .value)
```

**6 Obtain the password for the key vault (DBADMINPASSWORD):**

```
$ az keyvault secret show --resource-group $RESOURCE_GROUP
--vault-name $USER_ID --name dbadminpassword
```

**7 Re-encrypt the password.**

Re-encrypting the password requires the database server name. Obtain the database server name using the following command:

```
$ az postgres flexible-server list --resource-group
$RESOURCE_GROUP | jq -r '.[].name'
```

Use the following command to re-encrypt the password:

```
$ az postgres flexible-server execute -p '$DBADMINPASSWORD' -u
$DBADMINUSER -n $DBSERVER -d postgres -q "ALTER USER \"nbdbadmin\"
WITH PASSWORD '$DBADMINPASSWORD';"
```

**8 Use the following command to disable non-SSL access:**

```
$ az postgres flexible-server parameter set --resource-group
$RESOURCE_GROUP --server-name DBSERVER --name
require_secure_transport --value on
```

**9 Use the following command to verify if non-SSL access is disabled:**

```
$ az postgres flexible-server parameter show --resource-group
$RESOURCE_GROUP --server-name $DBSERVER --name
require_secure_transport | jq -r 'value'
```

**10 Delete the key vault access policy created in step 4 above:**

```
$ az keyvault delete-policy -n $KEYVAULT --upn $USER_ID
```

**11 Exit from the azure CLI pod:**

```
$ exit
```

**12 Delete the az CLI pod:**

```
$ kubectl delete pod az-cli
```

# Performing catalog backup and recovery

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Backing up a catalog](#)
- [Restoring a catalog](#)

## Backing up a catalog

You can backup a catalog by using one of the following methods:

- Automatically
- Manually

### Automatic creation of catalog backup policy

You can backup a catalog by using the automatically created catalog backup policy which is applicable only for fresh/new deployment.

#### To backup a catalog automatically

- 1 A catalog backup policy can be automatically configured during a new installation. This can be done by supplying the DR Secret through the **drInfoSecret** field of the `environment.Spec` in `helm/values.yaml` file.
- 2 The **drInfoSecret** field must be created before deployment using the following command:

```
kubectl create secret generic dr-info-secret --namespace  
<nbu-namespace> --from-literal=passphrase="Y@123abCdEf"  
--from-literal=emailAddress="abc@xyz.com"
```

The passphrase field is compulsory.

- 3 Once catalog policy is created, configure **Recovery Vault** storage in the catalog backup policy. For more information, see *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.
- 4 In the automatically configured catalog backup policy, the DR package path is set to `mnt/nbdb/usr/openv/drpackage_<storage server name>`. If required, this can be changed by editing the policy from the Web UI.
- 5 If the email field is included in the DR Secret, then on running a catalog backup job, the created **DRPackages** would be sent through email. This is applicable only when the e-mail server is configured. See [“Configuring email server”](#) on page 210.

## Manual creation of catalog backup policy

### To backup a catalog manually

- 1 Exec into the primary server pod using the following command:  

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash
```
- 2 Create a directory **DRPackages** at persisted location using `mkdir`  
`/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages`.
- 3 Change ownership of **DRPackages** folder to service user using `chown`  
`nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr /mnt/nblogs/DRPackages`.
- 4 Set the passphrase to be used at time of catalog recovery.
  - Open NetBackup Administrator Console (Java UI).
  - Navigate to **Security Management > Global Security Setting > Disaster Recovery**.
  - In **Encryption for Disaster Recovery** section, add the passphrase, confirm passphrase, and save it.
- 5 Add respective external media server entry in host properties through **NetBackup Management > Host properties > Master Server > Add Additional server**.

---

**Note:** It is recommended to use an external media server for catalog backup and recovery.

---

- 6 Exec into the primary server pod using the following command:  

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryserver pod name> -- bash
```

  
Set the **KMS\_CONFIG\_IN\_CATALOG\_BKUP** configuration option to 1 in `/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf` file of primary server to include the KMS configuration as part of the disaster recovery package during catalog backup.

- 7 Restart the NetBackup services in primary and external media server.
  - Exec into the primary server pod using the following command:  
`kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash`
  - Deactivate NetBackup health probes using the  
`/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health deactivate` command.
  - Run the `/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command. After stopping all services restart the services using the  
`/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.
  - Activate NetBackup health probes using the  
`/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health activate` command.
  - Run the `/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command. After stopping all services restart the services using the  
`/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command on the external media server.
- 8 Configure storage unit on earlier added external media server.

For more information, refer to the *NetBackup™ Administrator's Guide, Volume 1*

---

**Note:** It is recommended to use AdvancedDisk or BasicDisk storage unit.

---
- 9 Configure NetBackup catalog backup policy.

Add package path as `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` while configuring the catalog backup policy.
- 10 Run the catalog backup job.

## Restoring a catalog

You can restore a catalog. This section describes the procedures for restoring a catalog when catalog backup is taken on external media server or on MSDP-X and the,

- [Primary server corrupted](#)
- [MSDP-X corrupted](#)
- [MSDP-X and Primary server corrupted](#)

## Primary server corrupted

- When catalog backup is taken on external media server
  - When catalog backup is taken on MSDP-X
- 1 Copy DRPackages files (packages) located at `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages/` from the pod to the host machine from where Kubernetes Service cluster is accessed.  
  
Run the `kubectl cp`  
`<primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages`  
`<Path_where_to_copy_on_host_machine> command.`
  - 2 Preserve the data of `/mnt/nbdata` and `/mnt/nblogs` on host machine by creating tar and copying it using the `kubectl cp`  
`<primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:<tar_file_name>`  
`<path_on_host_machine_where_to_preserve_the_data> command.`
  - 3 Change CR spec from *paused: false* to *paused: true* in primary, mediaServers, and msdpScaleouts sections in environment object using the following command:  
  
`kubectl edit <environment_CR_name> -n <namespace>`
  - 4 Change replica count to 0 in primary server's statefulset using the `kubectl edit statefulset <primary-server-statefulset-name> -n <namespace>` command.
  - 5 Clean the PV and PVCs of primary server as follows:
    - Get names of PV attached to primary server PVC (catalog, log and data) using the `kubectl get pvc -n <namespace> -o wide` command.
    - Delete primary server PVC (catalog, log and data) using the `kubectl delete pvc <pvc-name> -n <namespace>` command.
    - Delete the PV linked to primary server PVC using the `kubectl delete pv <pv-name>` command.
  - 6 (*EKS-specific*) Navigate to mounted EFS directory and delete the content from **primary\_catalog** folder by running the `rm -rf /efs/*` command.
  - 7 Change CR spec *paused: true* to *paused: false* in primary server section in and reapply yaml with the `kubectl apply -f environment.yaml -n <namespace>` command.
  - 8 Once the primary pod is in ready state, execute the following command in the primary server pod:  
  
`kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash`

- Increase the debug logs level on primary server.
  - Create a directory `DRPackages` at persisted location using `mkdir /mnt/nblogs/DRPackages`.
  - Change ownership of the `DRPackages` folder to service user using the `chown nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr /mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` command.
- 9 Copy earlier copied DR files to primary pod at `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` using the `kubectl cp <Path_of_DRPackages_on_host_machine> <primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` command.
- 10 (*Applicable for catalog backup taken on external media server*)
- Execute the following steps in the primary server pod:
    - Change ownership of files in `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` using the `chown nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr <file-name>` command.
    - Deactivate NetBackup health probes using the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health deactivate` command.
    - Stop the NetBackup services using `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all`.
    - Execute the `nbhostidentity -import -infile /mnt/nblogs/DRPackages/<filename>.drpkg` command.
    - Restart all the NetBackup services using `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all`.
  - Verify security settings are back.
  - Add respective media server entry in host properties using NetBackup Administration Console as follows:  
Navigate to **NetBackup Management > Host properties > Master Server > Add Additional server** and add media server.
  - Restart the NetBackup services in primary server pod and external media server
    - Execute the `kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash` command in the primary server pod.
    - Run the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command. After stopping all services restart the same using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.
    - Run the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command. After stopping all services restart the services using the



`/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command on the external media server.

- Perform catalog recovery from NetBackup Administration Console. For more information, refer to the [NetBackup Troubleshooting Guide](#).
- Execute the `kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash` command in the primary server pod.
  - Stop the NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command.
  - Start NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.
  - Activate NetBackup health probes using the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health activate` command.
- Change CR spec from *paused: true* to *paused: false* in primary, mediaServers, and msdpScaleouts sections in environment object using the following command:
 

```
kubectl edit <environment_CR_name> -n <namespace>
```
- To configure NetBackup IT Analytics refer to the following topic: See “[Configuring NetBackup IT Analytics for NetBackup deployment](#)” on page 101.

## 11 (Applicable for catalog backup taken on MSDP-X)

- Execute the following steps (after exec) into the primary server pod:
  - Change ownership of files in `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` using the `chown nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr <file-name>` command.
  - Deactivate NetBackup health probes using the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health deactivate` command.
  - Stop the NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command.
  - Execute the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbhostidentity -import -infile /mnt/ndbdb/usr/opensv/drpackage/<filename>.drpkg` command.
  - Clear `bpclntcmd -clear_host_cache` NetBackup host cache by running the command.
  - Start NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.

- Refresh the certificate revocation list using the  
`/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/nbcertcmd -getcrl` command.
- From Web UI, allow reissue of token from primary server for MSDP only as follows:  
Navigate to **Security > Host Mappings** for the MSDP storage server and select **Allow Auto reissue Certificate**.
- Run the primary server reconciler as follows:
  - Edit the environment (using `kubectl edit environment -n <namespace>` command) and change primary spec's for **paused** field to **true** and save it.
  - To enable the reconciler to run, the environment must be edited again and the primary's **paused** field must be set to **false**.

The SHA fingerprint is updated in the primary CR's status.

- Edit the environment using `kubectl edit environment -n <namespace>` command and change **paused** field to **false** for MSDP.
- Verify if MSDP installation is successful and default MSDP storage server, STU and disk pool is created with old names. This takes some time. Hence, wait before the STU and disk pool display on the Web UI before proceeding to the next step.
- Perform from step 2 in the following section:  
See [“Scenario 2: MSDP Scaleout and its data is lost and the NetBackup primary server was destroyed and is re-installed”](#) on page 180.
- Edit environment CR and change `paused: false` for media server.
- Perform full catalog recovery using one of the following options:  
Trigger a catalog recovery from the Web UI.  
Or  
Exec into primary pod and run `bprecover -wizard` command.
- Once recovery is completed, restart the NetBackup services:  
Stop NetBackup services using the  
`/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command.  
Start NetBackup services using the  
`/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.
- Activate NetBackup health probes using the  
`/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health activate` command.
- Verify/Backup/Restore the backup images in NetBackup server to check if the MSDP-X cluster has recovered or not.

- Verify that the Primary, Media, MSDP and Snapshot Manager server are up and running.

## MSDP-X corrupted

- 1 Note the storage server, cloud LSU and cloud bucket name.
- 2 Edit the environment and remove MSDP server.
- 3 From NetBackup Web UI allow reissue of token for MSDP server.
- 4 Deploy MSDP server with same fields using the following command:  

```
kubect1 apply -f environment.yaml
```
- 5 Verify if MSDP installation is successful and default MSDP storage server, STU and disk pool is created with old names.
- 6 Perform from step 2 in the following section:  
See [“Scenario 1: MSDP Scaleout and its data is lost and the NetBackup primary server remains unchanged and works well”](#) on page 178.
- 7 Verify/Backup/Restore the backup images in NetBackup server to check if the MSDP-X cluster has recovered or not.

## MSDP-X and Primary server corrupted

- 1 Note the storage server, cloud LSU and cloud bucket name.  
Note the DR Passphrase also.
- 2 Copy DRPackages files (packages) from the pod to the local VM if not received over the email using the following command:

```
kubect1 cp
<primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nbd0/usr/openv/dtpackage_<storageservername>
<Path_where_to_copy_on_host_machine>
```

- 3 Delete the corrupted MSDP and Primary server by running the following command:

```
kubect1 delete -f environment.yaml -n <namespace>
```

---

**Note:** Perform this step carefully as it would delete NetBackup.

---

- 4 Clean the PV and PVCs of primary and MSDP server as follows:
  - Get names of PV attached to primary and MSDP server PVC (catalog, log and data) using the `kubect1 get pvc -n <namespace> -o wide` command.

- Delete primary and MSDP server PVC (catalog, log and data) using the `kubect1 delete pvc <pvc-name> -n <namespace>` command.
  - Delete the PV linked to primary server PVC using the `kubect1 delete pv <pv-name>` command.
- 5 (EKS-specific) Navigate to mounted EFS directory and delete the content from **primary\_catalog** folder by running the `rm -rf /efs/*` command.
- 6 Modify the `environment.yaml` file with the *paused: true* field in the MSDP and Media sections.
- Change CR spec from *paused: false* to *paused: true* in MSDP Scaleout and media servers. Save it.

---

**Note:** Ensure that only primary server is deployed. Now apply the modified `environment.yaml` file.

---

Save the `environment.yaml` file. Apply the `environment.yaml` file using the following command:

```
kubect1 apply -f environment.yaml -n <namespace>
```

- 7 After the primary server is up and running, perform the following:
- Execute the `kubect1 exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-pod-name> -- /bin/bash` command in the primary server pod.
  - Increase the debug logs level on primary server.
  - Create a directory `DRPackages` at persisted location using `mkdir /mnt/nblogs/DRPackages`.
- 8 Copy earlier copied DR files to primary pod at `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` using the `kubect1 cp <Path_of_DRPackages_on_host_machine> <primary-pod-namespace>:<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` command.
- 9 Execute the following steps (after exec) into the primary server pod:
- Change ownership of files in `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages` using the `chown nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr <file-name>` command.
  - Deactivate NetBackup health probes using the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health deactivate` command.
  - Stop the NetBackup services using the `/usr/openv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command.

- Execute the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbhostidentity -import -infile /mnt/ndbdb/usr/opensv/drpackage/<filename>.drpkg` command.
- Clear `bpcIntcmd -clear_host_cache` NetBackup host cache by running the command.
- Start NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.
- Refresh the certificate revocation list using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/nbcertcmd -getcrl` command.

**10** Run the primary server reconciler as follows:

- Edit the environment (using `kubectl edit environment -n <namespace>` command) and change primary spec's for **paused** field to *true* and save it.
- To enable the reconciler to run, the environment must be edited again and the primary's **paused** field must be set to *false*.

The SHA fingerprint is updated in the primary CR's status.

**11** From Web UI, allow reissue of token from primary server for MSDP, media and Snapshot Manager server as follows:

Navigate to **Security > Host Mappings** for the MSDP storage server and select **Allow Auto reissue Certificate**.

Repeat this for media and Snapshot Manager server entries.

**12** Edit the environment using `kubectl edit environment -n <namespace>` command and change **paused** field to *false* for MSDP.

**13** Perform from step 2 in the following section:

See [“Scenario 2: MSDP Scaleout and its data is lost and the NetBackup primary server was destroyed and is re-installed”](#) on page 180.

**14** Edit environment CR and change `paused: false` for media server.

**15** Once media server pods are ready, perform full catalog recovery using one of the following options:

Trigger a catalog recovery from the Web UI.

Or

Exec into primary pod and run `bprecover -wizard` command.

- 16** Once recovery is completed, restart the NetBackup services:

Stop NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.kill_all` command.

Start NetBackup services using the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bp.start_all` command.

- 17** Activate NetBackup health probes using the `/opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health activate` command.
- 18** Verify/Backup/Restore the backup images in NetBackup server to check if the MSDP-X cluster has recovered or not.
- 19** Verify that the Primary, Media, MSDP and Snapshot Manager server are up and running.
- 20** Verify that the Snapshot Manager is running.

# Setting key parameters in Cloud Scale deployments

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Tuning touch files](#)
- [Setting maximum jobs](#)
- [Enabling intelligent catalog archiving](#)
- [Enabling security settings](#)
- [Configuring email server](#)
- [Reducing catalog storage management](#)
- [Configuring zone redundancy](#)
- [Enabling client-side deduplication capabilities](#)

## Tuning touch files

Some files are populated with default values, which are used to tune the performance parameters of NetBackup. Following table lists the files and a brief description of what each accomplishes:

**Table 16-1** Files for tuning performance parameters of NetBackup

| File location                                            | Value set | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/DPS_PROXYDEFAULTRECVTIMEO | 800       | To set the timeout value for the Data Protection Server (DPS) proxy.<br><br>For more information, see <i>NetBackup Appliance Commands Reference Guide</i> .                                                         |
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/BPSCHED_THRESHOLD         | 1000000   | To control the frequency with which media servers send messages to the primary server to update job status in the activity monitor.<br><br>For more information, see <a href="#">Knowledge base 100008521</a> .     |
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/RBALLOC_BYTES_THRESHOLD   | 25000000  | To regulate the frequency with which media servers send disk storage capacity update (RBDB update) messages to the primary server.<br><br>For more information, see <a href="#">Knowledge base 100008521</a> .      |
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/REPORT_RAW_KBS            | 3600      | To reduce traffic to the primary server. Not required when writing to MSDP server.                                                                                                                                  |
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/DEFERRED_IMAGE_LIMIT      | 64        | To change the limit of number of backed up images.<br><br>For more information, see <i>NetBackup Appliance Commands Reference Guide</i> .                                                                           |
| /usr/openv/netbackup/db/config/SIZE_DATA_BUFFERS         | 262144    | To set the buffer size that the media server uses to buffer data between the network and the tape drive. It must be a multiple of 1024.<br><br>For more information, see <a href="#">Knowledge base 100000498</a> . |



**Table 16-1** Files for tuning performance parameters of NetBackup (*continued*)

| File location                             | Value set | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| /usr/opensv/netbackup/MAX_ENTRIES_PER_ADD | 100000    | To configure the number of metadata entries to be sent to the primary's catalog in each batch.<br><br>For more information, see <i>NetBackup Backup Planning and Performance Tuning Guide</i> . |

## Setting maximum jobs

The maximum number of jobs that can run concurrently per client is set to 5. This value can be changed.

For more information on changing the value, refer to the *NetBackup Backup Planning and Performance Tuning Guide*.

## Enabling intelligent catalog archiving

Intelligent catalog archiving (ICA) is used to reduce the number of catalog files based on a specified retention period or file size. When you enable ICA, any catalog file that is older than the specified retention period value is removed from the catalog disk. The retention value is set to 2592000 (that is., 30 days). The advantage of ICA is that it shortens catalog backup time, by reducing the number of catalog files to be backed up.

To change the retention period, refer to the 'Enabling intelligent catalog archiving' section of the *NetBackup Administrator's Guide, Volume I*.

## Enabling security settings

Changes to the security settings include the following:

- Disabling earlier versions of NetBackup 8.0 support for insecure connections. For more information on enabling this, refer to the 'How NetBackup 8.1 hosts communicate with NetBackup 8.0 and earlier hosts' section of *NetBackup Read This First Guide for Secure Communications*.

- Setting the data-in-transit encryption to **Preferred On**, which can be changed as listed in 'Configure the global data-in-transit encryption setting' section of *NetBackup Security and Encryption Guide*.

## Configuring email server

Mail server can be configured during NetBackup installation by including the name of the **configMap** in the **emailServerConfigmapName** field of the `environment.Spec` in `helm/values.yaml` file.

- The **configMap** data must have entries in a `key: value` form to configure the mail server, as shown below for `smtp` field:

```
emailServerConfigmap
apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  name: configmail
  namespace: <netbackup-namespace>
data:
  smtp: "xyz.abc.domain.com"
  smtp-use-starttls: ""
```

- If there is a specific parameter that needs to be set only (not value), a key can only be specified with the **smtp-use-starttls** field.

Perform the following to modify the mail server settings:

- Exec into the primary container using the following command:  
`kubectrl exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryServer-pod-name> -- bash`
- Update the persistent file at `/mnt/nbdata/usr/openssl/etc/mail.rc` to set the fields as required.

If the **emailServerConfigmapName** field in the `environment.Spec`, is left empty (""), then the mail server would not be configured automatically as a part of NetBackup installation. In such case, the user will have to configure it manually post installation by performing the following steps:

- Exec into the primary container using the following command:  
`kubectrl exec -it -n <namespace> <primaryServer-pod-name> -- bash`
- Execute the following commands in the primary container:  
`mv /etc/mail.rc /mnt/nbdata/usr/openssl/etc/mail.rc`  
`ln -nsf /mnt/nbdata/usr/openssl/etc/mail.rc /etc/mail.rc`

- Update values for required fields at `/mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/etc/mail.rc`. An example of **mail.rc** file is shown below:

```
mail.rc
# mail server configuration
set mail
set mailserver=xyz.abc.domain.com:25
set smtp-use-starttls
```

## Reducing catalog storage management

(For EKS-specific deployments) The primary catalog storage is based on the Elastic File System, which provides unlimited storage (automatic expansion), thereby effacing the need to monitor it.

(For AKS-specific deployments) With this release, the fresh installation of Cloud Scale deployment would have the capability to self-regulate the primary server's catalog volume. The functionality can be controlled by changing the value of **allowVolumeExpansion** field in the primary server catalog storage section of `values.yaml` file.

If the **allowVolumeExpansion** field is set to,

- *true*, the operator automatically expands the catalog's capacity by 20%, every time the catalog reaches 80% of its usage. This check for catalog usage is only triggered every 10 hours.
- *false*, the automatic check and expansion of primary catalog usage will not happen, and if needed, the volume can be expanded. See [“Expanding storage volumes”](#) on page 139.

If required, the user can expand the catalog capacity by a value different than 20%. This can be achieved by performing the following:

- Edit the environment CR using the following command:  

```
kubectl edit environment -n <namespace>
```
- Set the value of **allowVolumeExpansion** field to *false* under primary's catalog storage.
- Manually expand the catalog capacity to desired value. See [“Expanding storage volumes”](#) on page 139.
- To enable automatic catalog volume usage monitoring, update the value of **allowVolumeExpansion** field in the environment to *true* after manually updating the capacity.

# Configuring zone redundancy

This section describes configuring zone redundancy using the zone redundant storage for disk-based and file-based storage.

## Disk-based storage

### Azure-disk based storage

- Zone-redundant storage (ZRS) synchronously replicates an Azure managed disk across three Azure availability zones in the regions selected. This can be selected by setting **skuname: Premium\_ZRS** in the `yaml` file for creating the storage class.
- ZRS disks are currently available in: Southeast Asia, Australia East, Brazil South, North Europe, West Europe, France Central, Japan East, Korea Central, Qatar Central, UK South, East US, East US 2, South Central US and West US 2.
- The following `yaml` file can be used:

```
aks-disk
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: <storage class name>
provisioner: disk.csi.azure.com
reclaimPolicy: Retain
allowVolumeExpansion: True
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
parameters:
  skuname: Premium_ZRS
```

### EKS disk-based storage (EBS)

- Zone redundancy not supported. The snapshot backup to store backup at different S3 bucket can be used.
- Refer to the following document to take volume snapshot and restore it to the existing pod:  
[Using Amazon EBS snapshots for persistent storage with your Amazon EKS cluster by leveraging add-ons](#)

## File-based storage

### Azure file-based storage

- Zone-redundant storage (ZRS) replicates the storage account synchronously across three Azure availability zones in the primary region. This can be selected

by setting **skuname: Premium\_ZRS** in the `yaml` file for creating the storage class.

- ZRS for premium file shares is available in: Southeast Asia, Australia East, Brazil South, North Europe, West Europe, France Central, Japan East, Korea Central, Qatar Central, UK South, East US, East US 2, South Central US and West US 2.
- The following `yaml` file can be used:

```
aks-file
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
metadata:
  name: <name of storage class>
provisioner: file.csi.azure.com
reclaimPolicy: Retain
allowVolumeExpansion: True
volumeBindingMode: Immediate
parameters:
  skuName: Premium_ZRS
  protocol: nfs
```

### EKS file-based storage (EFS)

- Zone redundancy is automatically supported within the region.  
For more information, see [Resilience in Amazon Elastic File System](#).

## Enabling client-side deduplication capabilities

Client-side deduplication or Client Direct is an easy way to improve the performance of your backups to an MSDP target. Backup performance can be improved by using the OpenStorage storage server instead of the media server to transfer the data during backups. For more information on Client Direct, see *NetBackup Deduplication Guide*.

This can be done by adding the **OST\_CLIENT\_DIRECT** new entry in the `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf` file of the media server. The **OST\_CLIENT\_DIRECT** entry can have one of the following values:

- 0 - Client Direct will not be used as the data transfer method to transfer the data to the specified host.
- 1 - Client Direct will be preferred as the data transfer method to transfer the data to the specified host, contingent on Client Direct capability probes on the storage

server permitting the same. This is the default value set for Cloud Scale deployment.

- 2 - Client Direct will always be used as the data transfer method to transfer the data to the specified host.

To change the value of **OST\_CLIENT\_DIRECT** entry through the bpclient CLI, refer to the *NetBackup Commands Reference Guide*.

To enable client-side deduplication during restores, add **OST\_CLIENT\_DIRECT\_RESTORE [=0/1/2]** entry to the `bp.conf` file of the media server(s). A new entry **OLD\_VNETD\_CALLBACK=YES** must be added to the `bp.conf` file of all the clients that would use the client-side deduplication feature during restores, barring which restore jobs would fail. For more information, see *NetBackup Administrator's Guide, Volume I*.

The restore mode (for enabling/disabling Client Direct) can also be changed using the bpclient CLI as listed under **client\_direct\_restore** of the *NetBackup Commands Reference Guide*.

If Client Direct is enabled/disabled using the `bp.conf` file and through the bpclient CLI, then the configuration in bpclient would take precedence over the `bp.conf` file changes.

# Maintenance

- [Chapter 17. MSDP Scaleout Maintenance](#)
- [Chapter 18. PostgreSQL DBaaS Maintenance](#)
- [Chapter 19. Upgrading](#)
- [Chapter 20. Uninstalling](#)
- [Chapter 21. Troubleshooting](#)

# MSDP Scaleout Maintenance

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Pausing the MSDP Scaleout operator for maintenance](#)
- [Logging in to the pods](#)
- [Reinstalling MSDP Scaleout operator](#)
- [Migrating the MSDP Scaleout to another node pool](#)

## Pausing the MSDP Scaleout operator for maintenance

For maintenance purpose, if you want the operator to stop reconciling the resources of one CR but do not affect the resources of the other CRs, you can pause the MSDP Scaleout operator.

### To pause the MSDP Scaleout operator

- 1 Specify `spec.paused: true` in the CR.
- 2 Run `kubectl apply -f <sample CR YAML>`.

Do not forcibly delete the deployment resource of MSDP Scaleout operator.

## Logging in to the pods

You can log in to the pods for the maintenance purpose.

To log in to the pod, run the `kubectl` executable file.



Run MSDP commands with non-root user **msdpsvc** after logging in to an engine pod.

For example, `sudo -E -u msdpsvc <command>`

The MSDP Scaleout services in an engine pods are running with non-root user **msdpsvc**. If you run the MSDP Scaleout services or commands with the root user, MSDP Scaleout may stop working due to file permissions issues.

## Reinstalling MSDP Scaleout operator

When you undeploy MSDP Scaleout operator, the MSDP Scaleout CRD is removed from the cluster. It also deletes all the existing MSDP Scaleout on the cluster. The PVC for the operator logs is also deleted. However, the MSDP Scaleout critical data and metadata is not deleted.

### To reinstall MSDP Scaleout operator

- 1 Run the following command to delete the MSDP Scaleout operator:

```
kubectl msdp delete [-k] [-n <sample-operator-namespace>]
```

- 2 Run the following command to redeploy the operator.

AKS: `kubectl msdp init -i <your-acr-url>/msdp-operator:<version> -s <storage-class-name> -l agentpool=<nodepool-name> [-n <sample-operator-namespace>]`

EKS: `kubectl msdp init -i <your-acr-url>/msdp-operator:<version> -s <storage-class-name> -l agentpool=<nodegroup-name> [-n <sample-operator-namespace>]`

- 3 If the reclaim policy of the storage class is **Retain**, run the following command to restart the existing MSDP Scaleout. MSDP Scaleout starts with the existing data/metadata.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

## Migrating the MSDP Scaleout to another node pool

You can migrate an existing MSDP Scaleout on another node pool in case of the Kubernetes infrastructure issues.

**To migrate the MSDP Scaleout to another node pool**

- 1 Ensure that no job running related to MSDP Scaleout that is going to migrate.
- 2 Update the node selector value **spec.nodeSelector** to the new node in the CR YAML file.
- 3 Apply new CR YAML to update the CR in the Kubernetes environment.

```
kubectl apply -f <your-cr-yaml>
```

---

**Note:** All affected pods or other Kubernetes workload objects must be restarted for the change to take effect.

---

- 4 After the CR YAML file update, existing pods are terminated and restarted one at a time, and the pods are re-scheduled for the new node pool automatically.

---

**Note:** Controller pods are temporarily unavailable when the MDS pod restarts. Do not delete pods manually.

---

- 5 Run the following command to change MSDP Scaleout operator to the new node pool:

```
AKS: kubectl msdp init -i <your-acr-url>/msdp-operator:<version>  
-s <storage-class-name> -l agentpool=<new-nodepool-name>
```

```
EKS: kubectl msdp init -i <your-acr-url>/msdp-operator:<version>  
-s <storage-class-name> -l agentpool=<new-nodegroup-name>
```

- 6 If node selector does not match any existing nodes at the time of change, you see the message on the console.

If auto scaling for node is enabled, it may resolve automatically as the new nodes are made available to the cluster. If invalid node selector is provided, pods may go in the pending state after the update. In that case, run the command above again.

Do not delete the pods manually.

# PostgreSQL DBaaS Maintenance

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Configuring maintenance window for PostgreSQL database in AWS](#)
- [Setting up alarms for PostgreSQL DBaaS instance](#)

## Configuring maintenance window for PostgreSQL database in AWS

You can enable a maintenance window for an Amazon RDS for PostgreSQL database instance by using one of the following methods:

- AWS Management Console
- AWS RDS Command Line Interface (CLI)
- RDS API

### Using the AWS Management Console

- 1 Open the [Amazon RDS](#) console.
- 2 In the left navigation pane, navigate to **Databases**.
- 3 Select the database instance for which you want to enable a maintenance window and click **Modify**.
- 4 Under the **Maintenance** window section, select a day and time for the maintenance window.
- 5 Select **Continue** and then **Modify** the database instance.

### Using the AWS RDS CLI

- 1 Open the Amazon RDS CLI.
- 2 Use the following command to enable a maintenance window for a database instance:

```
aws rds modify-db-instance --db-instance-identifier mydbinstance
--preferred-maintenance-window Mon:06:00-Mon:09:00
```

### Using the RDS API

- 1 Use the **ModifyDBInstance** action and set the **PreferredMaintenanceWindow** field in the request parameter.
- 2 Send the request to the RDS API endpoint.

You should be able to set the maintenance window to a specific day and time of your choice, provided is at least 30 minutes in the future and not within the next 24 hours. The maintenance window is specified in the **ddd:hh24:mi-ddd:hh24:mi** format, where:

**ddd** is the three-letter abbreviation for the day of the week

**hh24** is the hour in 24-hour format

**mi** is the minute

For more information refer to the "Maintaining a DB instance" section of the *Amazon RD User Guide*.

## Setting up alarms for PostgreSQL DBaaS instance

This section describes the steps to create alarms for PostgreSQL flexible server using Azure and AWS portals.

### Setting alarms for PostgreSQL DBaaS instance metrics in Azure

The alert triggers when the value of a specified metric crosses the assigned threshold. The alert triggers when the condition is met and when that condition is no longer being met.

#### Create an alert rule on a metrics from the Azure portal

- 1 In the [Azure portal](#), select the Azure Database for PostgreSQL server you want to monitor.
- 2 Under the **Monitoring** section of the sidebar, select **Alerts**.
- 3 Select **Create alert rule** or **+**.

- 4 On the **Create an alert rule** page, under the **Condition** tab select **Add condition**.
- 5 Select a metric from the list of signals to be alerted on from the **Select a signal** page.
- 6 Configure the alert logic including the Condition (for example, Greater than), Threshold (for example, 85 percent), Time Aggregation, Period of time the metric rule must be satisfied before the alert triggers (for example, over the last 30 minutes), and Frequency.
- 7 Select **Next: Actions >**.
- 8 Under the **Actions** section, select **Create action group** to create a new group to receive notifications on the alert.
- 9 Fill in the **Basics** form with a name, display name, subscription, and resource group. Select **Next: Notifications >**.
- 10 Configure an **Email/SMS message/Push/Voice** action type by providing the details for all the required fields and then click **OK**.
- 11 (Optional) Select **Next: Actions >** to add actions based on the alerts.
- 12 Select **Review+Create** to review the information and create.
- 13 Provide the alert details. and select **Next/Review+Create**.

If the alert triggers, an email would be sent to the provided email id in the notification section.

For more information, refer to the PostgreSQL section of the *Azure documentation*.

## Setting alarms for PostgreSQL DBaaS instance metrics in AWS

The following procedure is an example for creating an alarm that notifies the users if they run out of storage space on their RDS instance.

### Create an alert rule on a metrics from the AWS portal

- 1 Open the [CloudWatch console](#).
- 2 In the navigation pane, navigate to **Alarms > All Alarms**.
- 3 Select **Create alarm >** on the **Select metric** page > search for **FreeStorageSpace** metric > select **RDS** > select **Per-Database metrics**.  
For the instance that you want to monitor, select the DB instance identifier **FreeStorageSpace** metric.
- 4 Click on **Select metric**.
- 5 In the **Specify metric and conditions** step, provide the required details.

- 6 In the **Configure actions** step, provide the required details.  
  
After the details are provided and you click on **Create topic**, a confirmation email would be sent to the provided email address.  
  
Open the email notification that you received from AWS Notifications, and then click on **Confirm subscription**.
- 7 Return to the **Configure actions** page in the CloudWatch console and click **Next**.
- 8 Enter a name and description for your alarm, and then click **Next**.
- 9 Review the preview of your metric, and then select **Create alarm**.

---

**Note:** It is a best practice to create a second, critical alarm for a lower threshold. For example, set your first alarm for 25 GB, and the second critical alarm to 10 GB. For more information on creating alarms for other critical metrics, refer to the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

---

#### To configure event notifications for Amazon RDS

- 1 Open the [CloudWatch console](#).
- 2 In the search bar, search for **Simple Notification Services** and select **Topics** from the left pane.
- 3 Select **Create Topic > Standard**.  
  
Enter the required details and click **Create**.
- 4 Select **Create Subscription > Email from** the list of protocols.  
  
Enter the email address on which you want to receive notifications.

---

**Note:** Confirm the created subscription.

---

- 5 Navigate to **Amazon RDS console > Event subscriptions > Create event subscription**.  
  
Enter the Name, select the ARN for the SNS topic, and select Instances as the Source type.  
  
Select specific instances and select your instance.
- 6 Navigate to **Select specific event categories > select Maintenance > Create**.  
  
For more information, refer to the RDS maintenance section of the *Amazon Knowledge Center*.

# Upgrading

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Upgrading NetBackup](#)
- [Upgrading MSDP Scaleout](#)
- [Upgrading Snapshot Manager](#)

## Upgrading NetBackup

### Preparing for NetBackup upgrade

---

**Note:** Ensure that you go through this section carefully before starting with the upgrade procedure.

---

During upgrade, ensure that the following sequence of upgrade is followed:

- Upgrade MSDP operator  
See [“Upgrading MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 234.
- Upgrade NetBackup operator  
See [“Upgrading NetBackup operator”](#) on page 225.
- Upgrade NetBackup application  
See [“Upgrading NetBackup application”](#) on page 225.

In case the above sequence is not followed, user may face data loss.

## Preparing for NetBackup upgrade

- 1 Take a backup of all the NetBackup jobs and ensure that all the jobs are suspended.

- 2 Take a catalog backup.

See [“Backing up a catalog”](#) on page 196.

- 3 Copy **DRPackages** files (packages) located at `/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages/` from the pod to the host machine from where Kubernetes Service cluster is accessed.

Run the following command:

```
kubectl cp  
<primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:/mnt/nblogs/DRPackages  
<Path_where_to_copy_on_host_machine>
```

- 4 Preserve the data of `/mnt/nbdata` and `/mnt/nblogs` on host machine by creating tar and copying it using the following command:

```
kubectl cp  
<primary-pod-namespace>/<primary-pod-name>:<tar_file_name>  
<path_on_host_machine_where_to_preserve_the_data>
```

- 5 Preserve the environment CR object using the following command and operator directory that is used to deploy the NetBackup operator:

```
kubectl -n <namespace> get environment.netbackup.veritas.com  
<environment name> -o yaml > environment.yaml
```

---

**Note:** Ensure that you upgrade MSDP operator first.

---

- 6 (*AKS-specific*) In case of existing NetBackup deployments with Azure disks, change the storage class for catalog and log data of primary server to trigger data migration. For more information on changing the storage class, refer to the *AKS-specific requirements* sub-section of the following section:

See [“Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster”](#) on page 76.

- 7 (*EKS-specific*) In case of existing NetBackup deployments with EBS, change the storage class for catalog data of primary server to trigger data migration. For more information on changing the storage class, refer to the following section:

See [“Upgrade NetBackup from previous versions”](#) on page 227.



## Upgrading NetBackup operator

Ensure that all the steps mentioned in the following section are performed before performing the upgrade of NetBackup operator:

See [“Preparing for NetBackup upgrade”](#) on page 223.

### Upgrading the NetBackup operator

- 1 Push the new operator images, NetBackup main image, NetBackup media image to container registry with different tags.
- 2 Update the new image name and tag in images section in `kustomization.yaml` file in operator folder available in the new package folder.
- 3 Update the node selector and tolerations in `operator_patch.yaml` file in `operator/patches` folder in the new package folder.
- 4 To upgrade the operator, apply the new image changes using the following command:

```
kubectl apply -k <operator folder name>
```

After applying the changes, new NetBackup operator pod will start in operator namespace and run successfully.

## Upgrading NetBackup application

Ensure that all the steps mentioned in the following section are performed before performing the upgrade of NetBackup application:

See [“Preparing for NetBackup upgrade”](#) on page 223.

Ensure that the following server upgrade sequence is followed:

- Primary server: Upgrade and verify it is successfully upgraded
- MSDP server: Upgrade and verify it is successfully upgraded
- Media server: Upgrade and verify it is successfully upgraded

### Note the following:

- All the media server replicas would be upgraded and media server autoscaler would scale in the media server replicas to **minimumReplicas**. Default value of **minimumReplicas** is 1 and if it is not changed then after upgrade media servers would be scaled in to 1.
- It is recommended to use a separate node pool for media pods. Cluster autoscaling must be enabled on media server node pool. See [“Config-Checker utility”](#) on page 25.

## Upgrading the NetBackup application

To upgrade the primary server and media server, edit the current environment using the following command:

```
kubectl edit environment -n <netbackup namespace>
```

Update the **tag** with new image tag in **primary** section.

Update the **tag** with new image tag in **mediaServers** section.

Update the **storageClassName** for catalog volume for primary server in Storage subsection of primary section in `environment.yaml` file.

(AKS-specific) Update the details of data volume for primary server in `environment.yaml` file. Storage class must be of Azure managed disk storage type.

Save the changes to the environment and exit.

Primary server and media server pods would start with new container images respectively.

---

**Note:** Upgrade the PrimaryServer first and then change the tag for MediaServer by re-editing the environment to upgrade the MediaServer also. If this sequence is not followed then deployment may go into inconsistent state

---

### Perform the following if upgrade fails in between for primary server or media server

- 1 Check the installation logs using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <PrimaryServer-pod-name/MediaServer-pod-name> -n  
<PrimaryServer/MediaServer-CR-namespace>
```

- 2 If required, check the NetBackup logs by performing exec into the pod using the following command:

```
kubectl exec -it -n <PrimaryServer/MediaServer-CR-namespace>  
<PrimaryServer/MediaServer-pod-name> -- bash
```

- 3 Fix the issue and restart the pod by deleting the respective pod with the following command:

```
kubectl delete < PrimaryServer/MediaServer-pod-name > -n  
<PrimaryServer/MediaServer-CR-namespace>
```

- 4 New pod would be created and upgrade process will be restarted for the respective NetBackup server.
- 5 Data migration jobs create the pods that run before deployment of primary server. Data migration pod exist after migration for one hour only if data migration job failed. The logs for data migration execution can be checked using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

User can copy the logs to retain them even after job pod deletion using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n
<netbackup-environment-namespace> > jobpod.log
```

---

**Note:** Downgrade of NetBackup servers is not supported. If this is done, there are chances of inconsistent state of NetBackup deployment.

---

## Upgrade NetBackup from previous versions

### AKS-specific

Ensure that all the steps mentioned for data migration in the section are performed before upgrading to the latest NetBackup or installing the latest :

See [“Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster”](#) on page 76.

- User must have deployed NetBackup on Azure with `Azure disks` as its storage class.

While upgrading to latest NetBackup, data migration would happen only if existing storage class has been changed. The existing catalog data of primary server will be migrated (copied) from `Azure disks` to `Azure premium files`. Also new data volume would be created on `Azure disks` for NetBackup database. If **storageClassName** is changed for log, migration from azure disk NetBackup to azure disk will be triggered for logs.

- Fresh deployment: If user is deploying NetBackup for the first time, then `Azure premium files` will be used for primary server's catalog and `Azure disks` will be used for log and data volume for any backup and restore operation.

**(AKS-specific) Perform the following steps when upgrading NetBackup from version 10.2 or lower on AKS cluster version 1.25**

- 1 Pause the primary and media server spec by setting the value as *paused: true* in **primaryServer** and **mediaServer** sections in environment CR using the following command:

```
Kubect1 edit environments -n <namespace>
```

- 2 Change the value of primary and server statefulset to 0 using the following command:

```
kubect1 scale statefulsets <stateful-set-name> --replicas=0 -n  
<namespace>
```

- 3 Change the value of media server statefulset to 0 using the following command:

```
kubect1 scale statefulsets <stateful-set-name> --replicas=0 -n  
<namespace>
```

- 4 Delete the revertfix yaml file using the following command:

```
kubect1 delete -f <revertfix_yaml>
```

- 5 Restart the AKS cluster or set the scale node to 0 and rescale it.

- 6 Upgrade to the latest versions of NetBackup and MSDP operator.

- 7 Un pause the primary and media server spec by changing the value as *paused: false* in **primaryServer** and **mediaServer** sections in environment CR using the following command:

```
kubect1 edit environments -n <namespace>
```

- 8 Change the imageTag to the latest imageTag for primary and media servers together and save it.

**EKS-specific**

Ensure that all the steps mentioned for data migration in the following section are performed before upgrading to the latest NetBackup or installing the latest :

See [“Preparing the environment for NetBackup installation on Kubernetes cluster”](#) on page 76.

- User must have deployed NetBackup on AWS with `EBS` as its storage class. While upgrading to latest NetBackup, the existing catalog data of primary server will be migrated (copied) from `EBS` to `Amazon elastic files`.
- Fresh NetBackup deployment: If user is deploying NetBackup for the first time, then `Amazon elastic files` will be used for primary server's catalog volume for any backup and restore operations.

**(EKS-specific) Perform the following steps when upgrading NetBackup from version 10.1**

- 1 Make primary environment controller paused to true as follows:
  - Edit the environment custom resource using the `kubectl edit Environment <environmentCR_name> -n <namespace>` command.
  - To pause the reconciler of the particular custom resource, change the *paused: false* value to *paused: true* in the `primaryServer` or `mediaServer` section and save the changes.
  - Scale down the primary server using the following commands:
    - To get statefulset name: `kubectl get sts -n <namespace>`
    - To scale down the STS: `kubectl scale sts --replicas=0 <STS name of primary server> -n <Namespace>`
- 2 Upgrade the MSDP with new build and image tag. Apply the following command to MSDP:
 

```
./kubectl-msdp init --image <Image name:Tag> --storageclass <Storage Class Name> --namespace <Namespace>
```
- 3 Edit the `sample/environment.yaml` file from new build and perform the following changes:
  - Add the tag: `<new_tag_of_upgrade_image>` tag separately under primary sections.
  - Provide the EFS ID for **storageClassName** of catalog volume in primary section.

---

**Note:** The provided EFS ID for **storageClassName** of catalog volume must be same as previously used EFS ID to create PV and PVC.

---

- Use the following command to retrieve the previously used EFS ID from PV and PVC:
 

```
kubectl get pvc -n <namespace>
```

From the output, copy the name of catalog PVC which is of the following format:

```
catalog-<resource name prefix>-primary-0
```
- Describe catalog PVC using the following command:
 

```
kubectl describe pvc <pvc name> -n <namespace>
```

Note down the value of **Volume** field from the output.
- Describe PV using the following command:

```
kubectl describe pv <value of Volume obtained from above step>
```

Note down the value of **VolumeHandle** field from the output which is the previously used EFS ID.

- For data and logs volume, provide the **storageClassName** and then apply `environment.yaml` file using the following command and ensure that the primary server is upgraded successfully:

```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml
```

- Upgrade the MSDP Scaleout by updating the new image tag in `msdp scaleout` section in `environment.yaml` file.
- Apply `environment.yaml` file using the following command and ensure that MSDP is deployed successfully:

```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml
```

- Edit the `environment.yaml` file and update the image tag for Media Server in `mediaServer` section.

- Apply `environment.yaml` file using the following command and ensure that the Media Server is deployed successfully:

```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml
```

## Upgrading NetBackup using Helm charts

### Prerequisites

Ensure that your machine has the required access and is able to push the image to the container registry:

- **ACR for Azure:** `az acr login -n <container_registry_name>`  
For example, `az acr login -n cpautomation`
- **ECR for AWS:** `aws ecr get-login-password --region region | docker login --username AWS --password-stdin aws_account_id.dkr.ecr.region.amazonaws.com`  
For example, `aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-2 | docker login --username AWS --password-stdin 165323042987.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.amazonaws.com`

## EEB installation

- 1 Download the EEB package to access the host.
- 2 Extract and load the docker images from the installation tar file on the access host using the following command:

```
tar -xvf <build_tar_file>
flexsnap_preinstall.sh
```

- 3 Create image tags to map the source image with the target image, so that the images can be pushed to the AWS/Azure container registry.

To tag the images, run the following command for each image depending on the container platform running on your host:

- *For Docker:* # `docker tag source_image_name:tag container_registry_name/target_image_name:tag`
- *For Podman:* # `podman tag source_image_name:tag container_registry_name/target_image_name:tag`

For example,

```
source_image_name = veritas/flexsnap-deploy
source_image_tag = 10.3.0.0.1041 (SnapshotManager_EEB_version)
target_image_name = veritas/flexsnap-deploy
target_image_tag = 10.3.0.0.1041 (SnapshotManager_EEB_version)
container_registry_name = cpautomation.azurecr.io
```

```
docker tag veritas/flexsnap-deploy:10.3.0.0.1041
cpautomation.azurecr.io/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:10.3.0.0.1041
```

Images for 10.3 are:

```
veritas/flexsnap-core
veritas/flexsnap-deploy
veritas/flexsnap-nginx
veritas/flexsnap-fluentd
veritas/flexsnap-rabbitmq
veritas/flexsnap-postgresql
veritas/flexsnap-datamover
```

---

**Note:** Tag all the required images.

---

- 4 Use the following command to push all the tagged images:

```
docker push container_registry_name/target_image_name:tag
```

For example, `docker push`

```
cpautomation.azurecr.io/veritas/flexsnap-deploy:10.3.0.0.1041
```

- 5 Edit the operator/kustomization.yaml file to reflect the new tag for flexsnap-operator pod.

Update the **newTag** field under the `cloudpointoperator`.

- 6 Use the following command to apply the operator related change:

```
kubectl apply -k operator -n <namespace>
```

- 7 Validate if the operator is updated or no:

- Use the following command to obtain the pod name of flexsnap-operator:

```
kubectl get pods -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

- To validate if the operator is updated or not:

- Run the following command to obtain the pod name of

flexsnap-operator:

```
kubectl get pods -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

- Run one of the following to validate if the operator is updated or not:

Describe the pod and check the events: `kubectl describe pod`

```
<flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

Or

To view the updated tag in the description: `kubectl describe pod`

```
<flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

```
| grep -Image
```

- 8 Edit the environment.yaml file to reflect the new tag:

```
tag: <SnapshotManager_EEB_version>
```

- 9 Update the NetBackup Snapshot Manager with the new tag:

```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml -n <environment_namespace>
```

- 10 To validate the upgrade of NetBackup Snapshot Manager:

- Use the following commands to check the CRO status:

```
kubectl get cpservers -n <environment_namespace>
```

```
kubectl describe cpservers <cpserver_cro_name> -n
```

```
<environment_namespace>
```

For example, `kubectl describe cpservers cpserver-1-224245 -n nbux`



- Use the following command to view the logs for successful upgrade and the upgraded version:

```
kubectl logs -f <flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n
<netbackup-operator-system>
```

### Post installation upgrade procedure using HELM charts

- 1 Perform steps 1 to 4 of 'EEB installation' procedure above.

- 2 Use the following command to update the new tag in flexsnap-operator:

```
kubectl edit deployment flexsnap-operator -n <operator_namespace>
```

- 3 Validate if the operator is updated or no:

- Use the following command to obtain the pod name of flexsnap-operator:

```
kubectl get pods -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

- To validate if the operator is updated or not:

- Run the following command to obtain the pod name of

```
flexsnap-operator:
```

```
kubectl get pods -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

- Run one of the following to validate if the operator is updated or not:

Describe the pod and check the events: `kubectl describe pod`

```
<flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

Or

To view the updated tag in the description: `kubectl describe pod`

```
<flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```

```
| grep -Image
```

- 4 Use the following command to edit the new tag in **cpServer** section of environment custom resource:

- Obtain the environment custom resource name: `kubectl get environment`  
-n <environment\_namespace>

- Edit the tag: `kubectl edit environment <environment_CRname> -n`  
<environment\_namespace>

- 5 To validate the upgrade of NetBackup Snapshot Manager:

- Use the following commands to check the CRO status:

```
kubectl get cpservers -n <environment_namespace>
```

```
kubectl describe cpservers <cpserver_cro_name> -n
```

```
<environment_namespace>
```

For example, `kubectl describe cpservers cpserver-1-224245 -n`  
nbux

- Use the following command to view the logs for successful upgrade and the upgraded version:

```
kubectl logs -f <flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n  
<netbackup-operator-system>
```

## Procedure to rollback when upgrade of NetBackup fails

---

**Note:** The rollback procedure in this section can be performed only after assuming that the customer has taken catalog backup before performing the upgrade.

---

For more information, refer to the following section:

See [“Restoring a catalog”](#) on page 198.

## Upgrading MSDP Scaleout

You can upgrade the MSDP Scaleout solution to the latest version in your AKS or EKS environment.

### To upgrade MSDP Scaleout operator

- 1 Install the new **kubectrl** plug-in and push the new docker images to your container registry.

See [“Installing the docker images and binaries”](#) on page 115.

- 2 Run the following command to upgrade the MSDP operator.

```
kubectrl msdp init -i <new-operator-image> -s <storage-class-name>  
-l agentpool=<nodepool-name> -n <operator-namespace>
```

All the options except **-i** option must be same as earlier when the operator was deployed initially.

**To upgrade MSDP Scaleout CR resources**

- 1 If you use the environment operator for the MSDP Scaleout deployment, run the following command to change the `spec.msdpScaleouts[<index>].tag` field in the existing CR resources:

```
kubect1 edit environment <environmentCR_name> -n <cr-namespace>
```

- 2 This step is applicable to AKS only.

If MSDP S3 service is enabled and you want to upgrade from NetBackup 10.2, you must provide the pre-allocated MSDP S3 FQDN and IP address in the `spec.msdpScaleouts[<index>].s3Ip` field.

See [“Enabling MSDP S3 service after MSDP Scaleout is deployed for AKS”](#) on page 121.

- 3 If you use the MSDP operator for the MSDP Scaleout deployment, run the following command to change the `spec.version` in the existing CR resources.

```
kubect1 edit msdpScaleout <cr-name> -n <cr-namespace>
```

- 4 This step is applicable to AKS only.

If MSDP S3 service is enabled and you want to upgrade from NetBackup 10.2, you must provide the pre-allocated MSDP S3 FQDN and IP address in the `spec.s3ServiceIPFQDN` field.

Wait for a few minutes. MSDP operator upgrades all the pods and other MSDP Scaleout resources automatically.

- 5 Upgrade process restarts the pods. The NetBackup jobs are interrupted during the process.

# Upgrading Snapshot Manager

## Upgrading Snapshot Manager operator

Ensure that all the steps mentioned in the following section are performed before performing the upgrade of Snapshot Manager operator:

See [“Preparing for NetBackup upgrade”](#) on page 223.

### Upgrading the Snapshot Manager operator

- 1 Push the new operator images, Snapshot Manager main image to container registry with different tags.
- 2 Update the new image name and tag in `images.cloudpointoperator` section in `kustomization.yaml` file in operator folder available in the new package folder.
- 3 Update the node selector and tolerations in `operator_patch.yaml` file in `operator/patches` folder in the new package folder.
- 4 To upgrade the operator, apply the new image changes using the following command:

```
kubectl apply -k <operator folder name>
```

After applying the changes, new Snapshot manager operator pod will start in operator namespace and run successfully.

## Upgrading Snapshot Manager

Edit the **tag** field in the CR to upgrade Snapshot Manager using environment CR. MODIFY event will be sent to Snapshot Manager operator which will trigger upgrade workflow.

### To upgrade Snapshot Manager

- 1 Update the variables appropriately:

```
NB_VERSION=10.1.0
OPERATOR_NAMESPACE="netbackup-operator-system"
ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE="ns-155"

NB_DIR=/home/azureuser/VRTSk8s-netbackup-${NB_VERSION}/
```

- 2 Edit the `operator/kustomization.yaml` file as follows:

```
KUSTOMIZE_FILE=${NB_DIR}operator/kustomization.yaml nano
$KUSTOMIZE_FILE
```

Update the **newName** and **newTag** under `cloudpointoperator`.

- 3 Upgrade the operator using the following command:

```
cd $NB_DIR kubectl apply -k operator sleep 20s
```

- 4 Check (Wait for) if the operator is upgraded and running:

```
kubectl describe pod $(kubectl get pods -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE |
grep flexsnap-operator | awk '{printf $1" " }') | grep Image:
kubectl get all -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE
```

- 5 Once the operator is upgraded successfully and it is running, update the **cpServer.tag** in `environment.yaml` file as follows:

```
nano ${NB_DIR}environment.yaml
```

- 6 Delete the **cpServer.credential** section from `environment.yaml` file.

- 7 Apply `environment.yaml` file to start upgrading Snapshot Manager services using the following command:

```
kubectl apply -f ${NB_DIR}environment.yaml -n
$ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

- 8 Check upgrade logs in **flexsnap-operator** using the following command:

```
kubectl logs -f $(kubectl get pods -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE | grep
flexsnap-operator | awk '{printf $1" " }')
```

- 9 Check Snapshot Manager status using the following command:

```
kubectl get cpserver -n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

## Procedure to rollback when upgrade of Snapshot Manager fails

If upgrade of NetBackup Snapshot Manager fails and the user wants to rollback to previous version (any version up to 10.1), perform the steps described below.

### Procedure to rollback Snapshot Manager

- 1 Make a copy of the `environment.yaml` file using the following command:

```
cp environment.yaml environment_without_nbsm.yaml
```

- 2 Remove the **cpServer** section from `environment_without_nbsm.yaml` file and apply it. This deletes the resources of `cpServer`.

If any resources are present from `flexsnap`, then manually delete the resources using the following commands:

```
■ kubectl delete deployment <deployment name> -n
<environment_namespace>
```

For example,

```
kubectl delete deployment.apps/flexsnap-mongodb -n nbux
```

- `kubectl delete job <job name> -n <environment_namespace>`
  - *(Applicable only if mongodb pvc exists)*  
`kubectl get pvc -n <environment_namespace> | grep mongodb-pvc`  
 If there is any response from the above command, then delete the psql pvc and pv. commands to delete the pvc  
`kubectl delete pvc psql-pvc -n <environment_namespace>`  
`kubectl delete pv $(kubectl get pv | grep psql-pvc | awk '{printf $1" " }')`
- 3** Re apply the `environment.yaml` file to start reinstalling the **cpServer** resources:
- ```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml -n <environment_namespace>
```
- 4** To validate the rollback for NetBackup Snapshot Manager, use one of the following methods:
- Check the CRO status using the following command:  
`kubectl get cpserver -n <environment_namespace>`
  - Use the following command to check the logs of each step after describing the above CRO:  
`kubectl describe cpserver <cpserver_cro_name> -n <environment_namespace>`  
 For example, `kubectl describe cpserver cpserver-1-224245 -n nbux`

---

**Note:** Ensure that all the pods are in running state.

---

- 5** Use the following command to verify the operator logs:
- ```
kubectl logs -f <flexnsap_operator_pod_name> -n <netbackup-operator-system>
```
- 6** After installation completion, describe any flexsnap pod to verify if it has the older tag.

## Post-migration tasks

After migration, if the name is changed to Snapshot Manager, then perform the following steps for Linux and Windows on-host agent renews and then perform the plugin level discovery:

### For Linux:

- Edit the `/etc/flexsnap.conf` file for migrated Snapshot Manager.

For example,

```
[root@<host name> flexsnap]# cat /etc/flexsnap.conf
[global]
target = nbuxqa-alphaqa-10-250-172-172.vxindia.veritas.com
hostid = azure-vm-b5c2b769-256a-4488-a71d-f809ce0fec5d

[agent]
id = agent.c2ec74c967e043aaae5818e50a939556
```

- Perform the Linux on-host agent renew using the following command:  
`/opt/VRTScloudpoint/bin/flexsnap-agent--renew--token <auth_token>`
- Restart linux on-host agent using the following command:  
`sudo systemctl restart flexsnap-core.service`

#### For Windows:

- Edit the `\etc\flexsnap.conf` file for migrated Snapshot Manager.  
For example,

```
[global]
target = nbuxqa-alphaqa-10-250-172-172.vxindia.veritas.com
hostid = azure-vm-427a67a0-6f91-4a35-abb0-635e099fe9ad

[agent]
id = agent.3e2de0bf17d54ed0b54d4b33530594d8
```

- Perform the Windows on-host agent renew using the following command:  
`"c:\ProgramFiles\Veritas\CloudPoint\flexsnap-agent.exe"--renew--token  
<auth_token>`

# Uninstalling

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Uninstalling MSDP Scalout from Kubernetes cluster](#)
- [Uninstalling Snapshot Manager from Kubernetes cluster](#)

## Uninstalling MSDP Scalout from Kubernetes cluster

### Cleaning up MSDP Scaleout

When you uninstall the MSDP Scaleout deployment from AKS or EKS, the MSDP engines, MSDP MDS servers, and the data is deleted from the cluster. The data is lost and cannot be recovered.



## To clean up MSDP Scaleout from AKS or EKS

### 1 Delete the MSDP Scaleout CR.

```
kubect1 delete -f <sample-cr-yaml>
```

When an MSDP Scaleout CR is deleted, the critical MSDP data and metadata is not deleted. You must delete it manually. If you delete the CR without cleaning up the data and metadata, you can re-apply the same CR YAML file to restart MSDP Scaleout again by reusing the existing data.

### 2 If your storage class is with the **Retain** policy, you must write down the PVs that are associated with the CR PVCs for deletion in the Kubernetes cluster level.

```
kubect1 get
pod,svc,deploy,rs,ds,pvc,secrets,certificates,issuers,cm,sa,role,rolebinding
-n <sample-namespace> -o wide

kubect1 get clusterroles,clusterrolebindings,pv -o wide
--show-labels|grep <sample-cr-name>
```

### 3 Delete all resources under the namespace where MSDP CR is deployed.

```
kubect1 delete namespace <namespace>
```

### 4 If your storage class is with the **Retain** policy, you must delete the Azure disks using Azure portal or delete the EBS volumes using Amazon console. You can also use the Azure or AWS CLI.

```
AKS: az disk delete -g $RESOURCE_GROUP --name $AZURE_DISK --yes
```

```
EKS: aws ec2 delete-volume --volume-id <value>
```

See [“Deploying MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 110.

See [“Reinstalling MSDP Scaleout operator”](#) on page 217.

## Cleaning up the MSDP Scaleout operator

You can delete the MSDP Scaleout operator to remove all related resources about MSDP Scaleout operator. The MSDP Scaleout operator and logs are deleted.

**To clean up MSDP Scaleout operator**

- 1 If your storage class is with **Retain** policy, write down the PVs that are associated with the Operator PVCs for deletion in the Kubernetes cluster level.

```
kubectl get
pod,svc,deploy,rs,ds,pvc,secrets,certificates,issuers,cn,sa,role,rolebinding
-n <sample-operator-namespace> -o wide

kubectl get clusterroles,clusterrolebindings,pv -o wide
--show-labels
```

- 2 Delete the MSDP Scaleout operator.

```
kubectl msdp delete [-n <sample-operator-namespace>].
```

- **-k:** Delete all resources of MSDP Scaleout operator except the namespace.
- **-n:** Namespace scope for this request.  
Default value: msdp-operator-system

- 3 If your storage class is with the **Retain** policy, you must delete the Azure disks using Azure portal or delete the EBS volumes using Amazon console. You can also use the Azure or AWS CLI.

```
AKS: az disk delete -g $RESOURCE_GROUP --name $AZURE_DISK --yes
```

```
EKS: aws ec2 delete-volume --volume-id <value>
```

See [“Deploying MSDP Scaleout”](#) on page 110.

See [“Reinstalling MSDP Scaleout operator”](#) on page 217.

# Uninstalling Snapshot Manager from Kubernetes cluster

When you uninstall Snapshot Manager from Kubernetes cluster, the Snapshot Manager related services are deleted from the cluster.

1. Delete cpServer related parameters from `environment.yaml` file and apply it.

```
ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE="netbackup-environment"
# Make sure the flexsnap-operator pod is running and ready.
# Comment out / remove cpServer part from environment.yaml then apply it.
```

Following commands can be used to remove and disable the Snapshot Manager from NetBackup:

```
kubectl apply -f environment.yaml -n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE sleep
10s
```

2. Ensure that you get the uninstall message in `flexsnap-operator operator` log.
3. To clean-up cpServer component, delete flexsnap specific persistent volumes (PVs), persistent volume claims (PVCs) and config maps. Note that these resources contain metadata of current cpServer installation and would be deleted.

Use the following respective commands to delete these resources:

- To remove `certauth-pvc`, `cloudpoint-pvc` and `mongodb-pvc`: # `kubectl delete pvc certauth-pvc cloudpoint-pvc mongodb-pvc -n <nb-namespace>`
- To remove associated PVs of `certauth-pvc`, `cloudpoint-pvc` and `mongodb-pvc`: # `kubectl delete pv <pv-name> -n <nb-namespace>`
- To remove `nbuconf` and `flexsnap-conf`: # `kubectl delete cm nbuconf flexsnap-conf -n <nb-namespace>`

# Troubleshooting

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Troubleshooting AKS and EKS issues](#)
- [Troubleshooting AKS-specific issues](#)
- [Troubleshooting EKS-specific issues](#)

## Troubleshooting AKS and EKS issues

This section lists the troubleshooting issues and their respective workaround that are common for the following cloud providers:

- Azure Kubernetes Services cluster
- Amazon Elastic Kubernetes cluster

### View the list of operator resources

To view all the operator resources, execute the following command on Kubernetes cluster:

```
$ kubectl get all -n netbackup-operator-system
```

The output should be something like this:

| NAME                                   |          | READY |
|----------------------------------------|----------|-------|
| STATUS                                 | RESTARTS | AGE   |
| pod/flexsnap-operator-7d45568767-n9g27 |          | 1/1   |
| Running                                | 0        | 18h   |
| pod/msdp-operator-controller-manager-0 |          | 2/2   |
| Running                                | 0        | 43m   |
| pod/msdp-operator-controller-manager-1 |          | 2/2   |
| Running                                | 0        | 44m   |

```
pod/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-6cbf85694f-p97sw    2/2
Running              0              42m
```

| NAME | TYPE |
|------|------|
|------|------|

| CLUSTER-IP                                               | EXTERNAL-IP  | PORT(S) | AGE      |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------|----------|------|
| service/msdp-operator-controller-manager-metrics-service |              |         |          |      |
| ClusterIP                                                | 10.96.144.99 | <none>  | 8443/TCP | 3h6m |
| service/msdp-operator-webhook-service                    |              |         |          |      |
| ClusterIP                                                | 10.96.74.75  | <none>  | 443/TCP  | 3h6m |

```
service/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-metrics-service
ClusterIP 10.96.104.94 <none> 8443/TCP 93m
service/netbackup-operator-webhook-service ClusterIP
10.96.210.26 <none> 443/TCP 93m
```

NAME

|                                                                                   | READY | UP-TO-DATE | AVAILABLE | AGE  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------------|-----------|------|
| deployment.apps/msdp-operator-controller-manager                                  |       |            |           |      |
|                                                                                   | 1/1   | 1          | 1         | 3h6m |
| deployment.apps/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-operator-controller-manager |       |            |           |      |
|                                                                                   | 1/1   | 1          | 93m       |      |

NAME

| DESIRED                                                          | CURRENT | READY | AGE  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------|------|
| replicaset.apps/msdp-operator-controller-manager-65d8fd7c4d      |         |       |      |
| 1                                                                | 1       | 1     | 3h6m |
| replicaset.apps/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-55d6bf59c8 |         |       |      |
| 1                                                                | 1       | 1     | 93m  |

Verify that both pods display **Running** in the Status column and both deployments display **2/2** in the **Ready** column.

[View the list of product resources](#)

To view the list of product resources run the following command:

```
$ kubectl get --namespace <namespace>  
all,environments,primaryservers,mediaservers,msdpscaleouts
```

The output should look like the following:

| NAME | READY | STATUS | RESTARTS | AGE |
|------|-------|--------|----------|-----|
|------|-------|--------|----------|-----|

|                            |     |         |   |     |
|----------------------------|-----|---------|---|-----|
| pod/dedupe1-uss-controller |     |         |   |     |
| -79d554f8cc-598pr          | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 68m |
| pod/dedupe1-uss-mds-1      | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 75m |
| pod/dedupe1-uss-mds-2      | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 74m |
| pod/dedupe1-uss-mds-3      | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 71m |
| pod/media1-media-0         | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 53m |
| pod/environment-sample     |     |         |   |     |
| -primary-0                 | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 86m |
| pod/x10-240-0-12.veritas   |     |         |   |     |
| .internal                  | 1/1 | Running | 0 | 68m |
| pod/x10-240-0-13.veritas   |     |         |   |     |
| .internal                  | 2/2 | Running | 0 | 64m |
| pod/x10-240-0-14.veritas   |     |         |   |     |
| .internal                  | 2/2 | Running | 0 | 61m |
| pod/x10-240-0-15.veritas   |     |         |   |     |
| .internal                  | 2/2 | Running | 0 | 59m |

| NAME              | TYPE         | CLUSTER-IP   | PORT(S)           | AGE |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|-------------------|-----|
| service/dedupe1-  |              |              |                   |     |
| uss-controller    | ClusterIP    | 10.3.xxx.xxx | 10100/TCP         | 68m |
| service/dedupe1-  |              |              |                   |     |
| uss-mds           | ClusterIP    | None         | 2379/TCP,2380/TCP | 75m |
| service/dedupe1-  |              |              |                   |     |
| uss-mds-client    | ClusterIP    | 10.3.xxx.xxx | 2379/TCP          | 75m |
| service/media1-   |              |              |                   |     |
| media-0           | LoadBalancer | 10.3.xxx.xxx | 13782:30648/TCP,  |     |
|                   |              |              | 1556:30248/TCP    | 54m |
| service/          |              |              |                   |     |
| environment-      |              |              |                   |     |
| sample-primary    | LoadBalancer | 10.3.xxx.xxx | 13781:30246/TCP,  |     |
|                   |              |              | 13782:30498/TCP,  |     |
|                   |              |              | 1556:31872/TCP,   |     |
|                   |              |              | 443:30049/TCP,    |     |
|                   |              |              | 8443:32032/TCP,   |     |
|                   |              |              | 22:31511/TCP      | 87m |
| service/          |              |              |                   |     |
| x10-240-0-12      |              |              |                   |     |
| -veritas-internal | LoadBalancer | 10.3.xxx.xxx | 10082:31199/TCP   | 68m |
| service/          |              |              |                   |     |

```
x10-240-0-13
-veritas-internal LoadBalancer 10.3.xxx.xxx      10082:32439/TCP,   68m
service/
x10-240-0-14                                     10102:30284/TCP
-veritas-internal LoadBalancer 10.3.xxx.xxx      10082:31810/TCP,   68m
service/
x10-240-0-15                                     10102:31755/TCP
-veritas-internal LoadBalancer 10.3.xxx.xxx      10082:31664/TCP,   68m
                                     10102:31811/TCP
```

| NAME                    | READY | UP-TO-DATE | AVAILABLE | AGE |
|-------------------------|-------|------------|-----------|-----|
| deployment.apps/dedupe1 |       |            |           |     |
| -uss-controller         | 1/1   | 1          | 1         | 68m |

| NAME                        | DESIRED | CURRENT | READY | AGE |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------|-------|-----|
| replicaset.apps/dedupe1-uss |         |         |       |     |
| -controller-79d554f8cc      | 1       | 1       | 1     | 68m |

| NAME                          | READY | AGE |
|-------------------------------|-------|-----|
| statefulset.apps/medial-media | 1/1   | 53m |
| statefulset.apps/environment  |       |     |
| -sample-primary               | 1/1   | 86m |

| NAME                     | TAG  | AGE | STATUS  |
|--------------------------|------|-----|---------|
| primaryserver.netbackup  |      |     |         |
| .veritas.com/environment |      |     |         |
| -sample                  | 10.3 | 88m | Success |

| NAME                   | TAG  | AGE | PRIMARY SERVER    | STATUS  |
|------------------------|------|-----|-------------------|---------|
| mediaserver.netbackup. |      |     | x10-240-0-10      |         |
| veritas.com/medial     | 10.3 | 54m | .veritas.internal | Success |

| NAME                | AGE | TAG  | SIZE | READY |
|---------------------|-----|------|------|-------|
| msdpscaleout.msdp.  |     |      |      |       |
| veritas.com/dedupe1 | 75m | 18.0 | 4    | 4     |

| NAME                   | READY | AGE | STATUS  |
|------------------------|-------|-----|---------|
| environment.netbackup. |       |     |         |
| veritas.com/           |       |     |         |
| environment-sample     | 3/3   | 88m | Success |

An environment is deployed successfully if all pods and environment CR display status as "Success".

## View operator logs

If environment deployment status is not successful, check operator logs for errors.

Command for MSDP Scaleout operator logs

```
$ kubectl logs pod/msdp-operator-controller-manager-65d8fd7c4d-whqpm
manager -n netbackup-operator-system -c manager
```

Command for NetBackup operator logs

```
$ kubectl logs
pod/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-55d6bf59c8-vltmp
netbackup-operator -n netbackup-operator-system
```

## View primary logs

To view primary server logs execute the following command to get a shell to the running container.

```
$ kubectl exec --stdin --tty pod/<primary-server-pod-name> -n
<namespace> -- /bin/bash
```

Once in the primary server shell prompt, to see the list of logs, run:

```
ls /usr/opensv/logs/
```

## Socket connection failure

Socket connection failure can happen because of the following reasons:

- Long processing delays
- Azure/AWS connection reset (default 4 minutes)
- Load on CPU or Memory pressure
- IO saturation and throttling under load

If there are problems with the TCP stacks on the hosts, network between the hosts, or unusual long processing delays, then the connection may drop and the TCP stack on the host is unaware of the situation.

The following error is displayed in the web UI under job details:

```
db_FLISTsend failed: unexpected message received (43)
*** - Error bptm (pid=14599) get_string() failed,
Connection reset by peer (104), network read error
*** - Info bptm (pid=14599) EXITING with status 42 <-----
*** - Info nbux-systest-media-1 (pid=14599)
StorageServer=PureDisk:nbux-systest-media-1;
```



```
Report=PDDO Stats for (nbux-systest-media-1):
scanned: 4195521 KB, CR sent: 171002 KB, CR sent over FC: 0 KB,
dedup: 95.9%, cache disabled, where dedup space saving:6.6%,
compression space saving:89.3%
*** - Info bpbkar (pid=19109) done. status: 42: network read failed
```

To resolve this issue, update the `sysctl.conf` values for NetBackup servers deployed on the Kubernetes cluster.

NetBackup image sets following values in `sysctl.conf` during Kubernetes deployment:

- `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time = 180`
- `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_intvl = 10`
- `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_probes = 20`
- `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 14000 65535`

These settings are persisted at the location `/mnt/nbdata/etc/sysctl.conf`.

Modify the values in `/mnt/nbdata/etc/sysctl.conf` and restart the pod. The new values are reflected after the pod restart.

If external media servers are used, perform the steps in the following order:

1. Add the following in `/usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf`:  
**HOST\_HAS\_NAT\_ENDPOINTS = YES**
2. Add the following `sysctl` configuration values in `etc/sysctl.conf` on external media servers to avoid any socket connection issues:
  - `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time = 180`
  - `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_intvl = 10`
  - `net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_probes = 20`
  - `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 14000 65535`
  - `net.core.somaxconn = 4096`
3. Save the setting using the `sysctl -p` command.

## Resolving an issue where external IP address is not assigned to a NetBackup server's load balancer services

The issue can be because of one of the following reasons:

- The **resourcePrefixName** mentioned in custom resource is not unique and valid.

- The static IP is provided in **networkLoadBalancer** section in CR but it is not created in Azure/AWS.
- The subnet or resource group is mentioned in annotations of **networkLoadBalancer** section in CR spec, the IP address is not available in given subnet or resource group.
- The RBAC permissions in your cluster for the given subnet or resource group are not assigned properly for allocating IP addresses.

**To resolve an issue where external IP address is not assigned to a NetBackup server's load balancer services**

- 1 Check the event logs of load balancer service using the `kubectl describe service <svc-name> -n <namespace>` command for detailed error information.
- 2 Run the `kubectl edit Environment <environmentCR-name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 3 Depending on the output of the command and the reason for the issue, perform the required steps and update the environment CR to resolve the issue.

## Resolving the issue where the NetBackup server pod is not scheduled for long time

The NetBackup server (primary server and media server) pods are stuck in Pending state. The issue can be because of one of the following reasons:

- Insufficient resource allocation.
- Persistent volume claims are not bound to persistent volume.

If nodes are not available, pod remains in pending state with event logs indicating nodes are scaling up, if auto scaling is configured in cluster.

**To resolve the issue where the NetBackup server pod is not scheduled for long time**

- 1 Check the pod event details for more information about the error using `kubectl describe <PrimaryServer/MediaServer_Pod_Name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 2 Depending on the output of the command and the reason for the issue, perform the required steps and update the environment CR to resolve the issue.

## Resolving an issue where the Storage class does not exist

The Config-Checker checks if the storage class name given in primary server/media server CR is available in the cluster.

The following error is displayed:

```
Error: ERROR Storage class with the <storageClassName> name does not exist.
```

After fixing this error, primary server or media server CR does not require any changes. In this case, NetBackup operator reconciler loop is invoked after every 10 hours. If you want to reflect the changes and invoke the NetBackup operator reconciler loop immediately, pause the reconciler of the custom resource by changing the *paused: false* value to *paused: true* in the primaryServer or mediaServer section by using the following command:

```
kubectl edit Environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>
```

Again change the value to *paused: false* (un pause) in the primaryServer or mediaServer section by using the following command:

```
kubectl edit Environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>
```

### To resolve an issue where the Storage class does not exist

- 1 Create storage class with the same name given in primary server or media server CR with ReclaimPolicy as **Retain** in the cluster.

To create storage class, refer to the following link:

[Azure Kubernetes Service storage classes](#)

[Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service storage classes](#)

In this scenario, no change in primary server or media server CR is required. As a result, reconciler loop is not invoked immediately.

- 2 To invoke the reconciler loop again, delete the respective CR by changing the *paused: false* value to *paused: true* in the primaryServer or mediaServer section in environment CR by using the following command:

```
kubectl edit Environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>
```

Save the changes.

Again change the value to *paused: false* in the primaryServer or mediaServer section by using the following command:

```
kubectl edit Environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>
```

Save the changes.

## Resolving an issue where the primary server or media server deployment does not proceed

primary server or media server deployment does not proceed even if **configcheckmode = default** in primary server or media server CR spec and no

other child resources are created. It is possible that the Config-Checker job has failed some of the configuration checks.

**To resolve an issue where the primary server or media server deployment does not proceed**

- 1 Check the status of Config-Checker **Configcheckerstatus** mentioned in primary server or media server CR status using the `kubectl describe <PrimaryServer/MediaServer> <CR name> -n <namespace>` command.

If the state is **failed**, check the Config-Checker pod logs.

- 2 Retrieve the Config-Checker pod logs using the `kubectl logs <config-checker-pod-name> -n <operator-namespace>` command.

Config-Checker pod name can be in the following format:

`<serverType>-configchecker-<configcheckermode>-randomID`, for example if its Config-Checker for primary server with **configcheckermode = default**, pod name is `primary-configcehcker-default-dhg34`.

- 3 Depending on the error in the pod logs, perform the required steps and edit the environment CR to resolve the issue.
- 4 Data migration jobs create the pods that run before deployment of primary server. Data migration pod exist after migration for one hour only if data migration job failed. The logs for data migration execution can be checked using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n
<netbackup-environment-namespace>
```

User can copy the logs to retain them even after job pod deletion using the following command:

```
kubectl logs <migration-pod-name> -n
<netbackup-environment-namespace> > jobpod.log
```

## Resolving an issue of failed probes

If a pod is not in a ready state for a **long** time, the `kubectl describe pod/<podname> -n <namespace>` command displays the following errors:

- Readiness probe failed: The readiness of the external dependencies is not set.  
  
Server setup is still in progress.
- Liveness probe failed: bpps command did not list nbwmc process. nbwmc is not alive.

The Primary server is unhealthy.

### To resolve an issue of failed probes

- 1 If you are deploying NetBackup on Kubernetes Cluster for the first time, check the installation logs for detailed error.

Use any of the following methods:

- Execute the following command in the respective primary server or media server pod and check the logs in `/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.logs`:  
`kubect1 exec -it -n <namespace> <pod-name> -- /bin/bash`
- Run the `kubect1 logs pod/<podname> -n <namespace>` command.

- 2 Check pod events for obtaining more details for probe failure using the following command:

```
kubect1 describe pod/<podname> -n <namespace>
```

Kubernetes will automatically try to resolve the issue by restarting the pod after liveness probe times out.

- 3 Depending on the error in the pod logs, perform the required steps or contact technical support.

## Resolving token issues

Media server installation log displays the following error in

```
/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.logs:
```

```
nbcertcmd: The -getCertificate operation
failed for server <primaryServerName>,
EXIT STATUS 5940: Reissue token is mandatory,
please provide a reissue token
```

NetBackup media server and NetBackup primary server were in running state. Media server persistent volume claim or media server pod is deleted. In this case, reinstallation of respective media server can cause the issue.

### To resolve token issues

- 1 Open the NetBackup web UI using primary server hostname given in the primary server CR status.
- 2 Navigate to **Security > Host Mappings**.
- 3 Click **Actions > Allow auto reissue certificate** for the respective media server name.

- 4 Pause the media server reconciler by setting the value as *paused: true* in **mediaServer** section in environment CR using the following command:

```
kubectl edit environment <environment-name> -n <namespace>
```

Save the changes.

- 5 Delete the media server statefulset using the following command:

```
kubectl delete sts --cascade=orphan <statefulsetName>
```

- 6 Delete respective media server pod using `kubectl delete <pod-name> -n <namespace>` command.

- 7 Delete data and logs PVC for respective media server only using the `kubectl delete pvc <pvc-name> -n <namespace>` command.

- 8 Un pause the media server reconciler by changing the value as *paused: false* in **mediaServer** section in environment CR using the following command:

```
kubectl edit environment <environment-name> -n <namespace>
```

Save the changes.

## Resolving an issue related to insufficient storage

Setup-server.logs of NetBackup primary server displays an error.

Insufficient storage on the node can cause this issue. Minimum hardware requirements for NetBackup may not be completed. During fresh deployment of primary server, the following error is displayed in `/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.logs`:

```
DBSPAWN ERROR: -86
Not enough memory to start
```

### To resolve an issue related to insufficient storage

- 1 Create a new nodepool with the hardware specifications as mentioned in the *NetBackup Deployment Guide for Kubernetes Clusters Administrator's Guide*.
- 2 Run the `kubectl get nodes` command to ensure that the nodes from the newly created nodepool are used in your cluster.
- 3 Update **nodeSelector** spec in primary section and apply the `environment.yaml` again using the `kubectl apply -f <environment.yaml>` command.

## Resolving an issue related to invalid nodepool

Invalid nodepool is mentioned in primary server or media server CR `nodeSelector` spec. Due to this, primary server or media server pod fails to schedule.

The following error is displayed:

```
Error: Did not match Pod's node affinity/selector.
```

#### To resolve an issue related to invalid nodepool

- 1 For media server CR, ensure that you copy spec information of the media server CR. The spec information is used to reapply the media server CR.
- 2 Edit the environment CR using the following command in **primary/mediaServer** section in environment CR update the **nodeSelector**, and save the changes

```
kubectl edit environment <environmentCR-name> -n <namespace>
```

## Resolving a token expiry issue

While creating a new media pod, token may expire, and installation of media server is not completed. The installation logs at `/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.logs` display an error on the respective media server.

```
EXIT STATUS 5934: The token has expired.
```

#### To resolve a token expiry issue

- 1 Edit the environment server CR using the `kubectl edit environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 2 In the **mediaServer** section, reduce the replica count.  
  
For example, if media pod with name `xyz-media-2` has the token expired issue and the replica was originally 3, then change the replica count to 2. Save the changes. The extra pods are deleted and statefulset displays new replica count in ready state (2/2).
- 3 Edit the environment server CR using the `kubectl edit environment <environment-CR-name> -n <namespace>` command.
- 4 Increase replica count to original replica count.  
  
As given in the example, change the replica count to 3. This creates additional media pods and reissues the token for newly added media server.

## Resolve an issue related to KMS database

Installation logs at `/mnt/nblogs/setup-server.logs` display an error message with other details. In this scenario, you must configure KMS manually.

```
Error: Failed to create KMS database
```

To resolve this issue, execute the following command in the primary server pod:

```
kubectl exec -it -n <namespace> <primary-server-pod-name> -- /bin/bash
```

Refer the [NetBackup Security and Encryption Guide](#) for configure KMS manually:

For other troubleshooting issue related to KMS, refer the [NetBackup Troubleshooting Guide](#).

## Resolve an issue related to pulling an image from the container registry

Primary or media server failed to deploy with **ImagePullBackOff** error. If the pod Status field displays **ImagePullBackOff**, it means that the pod could not start because Kubernetes cannot pull a container image. A misspelled registry or image name or image registry being not reachable can cause a **ImagePullBackOff** status.

Run the `$ k get all -n netbackup-operator-system` command.

The output should look like:

| NAME                   | READY | STATUS           | RESTARTS | AGE  |
|------------------------|-------|------------------|----------|------|
| pod/msdp-operator      |       |                  |          |      |
| -controller-manager-   |       |                  |          |      |
| 65d8fd7c4d-bsgms       | 2/2   | Running          | 0        | 7m9s |
| pod/netbackup-operator |       |                  |          |      |
| -controller-manager-   |       |                  |          |      |
| 5df6f58b9b-6ftt9       | 1/2   | ImagePullBackOff | 0        | 13s  |

For additional details, use the following command:

```
$ kubectl describe pod/<pod_name> -n netbackup-operator-system
```

Resolve this issue using any of the following methods:

- Check if image name and tag are correct. If not, edit and update the environment CR using the `kubectl edit environment <environment CR-name> -n <namespace>` command with correct image name and tag, and then save the changes.
- Check if the user is authorized and has permissions to access the Azure/AWS container registry.

## Resolving an issue related to recovery of data

If a PVC is deleted or the namespace where primary or media server is deployed, is deleted or deployment setup is uninstalled, and you want to recover the previous data, attach the primary server and media server PVs to its corresponding PVCs.



In case of recovering data from PV, you must use the same environment CR specs that are used at the time of previous deployment. If any spec field is modified, data recovery may not be possible.

### To resolve an issue related to recovery of data

- 1 Run the `kubectl get PV` command.
- 2 From the output list, note down PV names and its corresponding claim (PVC name and namespace) that are relevant from previous deployment point of view.

- 3 Set claim ref for the PV to null using the `kubectl patch pv <pv name> -p '{"spec":{"claimRef": null}}'` command.

For example, `kubectl patch pv`

```
pvc-4df282e2-b65b-49b8-8d90-049a27e60953 -p '{"spec":{"claimRef": null}}'
```

- 4 Run the `kubectl get PV` command and verify bound state of PVs is **Available**.

- 5 For the PV to be claimed by specific PVC, add the **claimref spec** field with PVC name and namespace using the `kubectl patch pv <pv-name> -p '{"spec":{"claimRef": {"apiVersion": "v1", "kind": "PersistentVolumeClaim", "name": "<Name of claim i.e. PVC name>", "namespace": "<namespace of pvc>"}}}'` command.

For example,

```
kubectl patch pv <pv-name> -p '{"spec":{"claimRef": {"apiVersion": "v1", "kind": "PersistentVolumeClaim", "name": "data-testmedia-media-0", "namespace": "test"}}}'
```

While adding claimRef add correct PVC names and namespace to respective PV. Mapping should be as it was before deletion of the namespace or deletion of PVC.

- 6 Deploy environment CR that deploys the primary server and media server CR internally.

## Check primary server status

Check the primary server custom resource status, with the command:

```
$ kubectl get primaryserver.netbackup.veritas.com/environment-sample -n <namespace>
```

| NAME               | TAG  | AGE  | STATUS |
|--------------------|------|------|--------|
| environment-sample | 10.0 | 3h1m | Failed |

If the output shows STATUS as *Failed* as in the example above, check the primary pod log for errors with the command:

```
$ kubectl logs pod/environment-sample-primary-0 -n <namespace>
```

## Pod status field shows as pending

If the pod Status field shows Pending state, it indicates that Kubernetes is not able to schedule the pod. To check use the following command:

```
$ kubectl get all -n netbackup-operator-system
```

The output is something like:

| NAME                                                       | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| pod/msdp-operator-controller-manager-65d8fd7c4d-bsgms      | 2/2   | Running | 0        | 12m |
| pod/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-6c9dc8d87f-pq8mr | 0/2   | Pending | 0        | 15s |

For more details use the following pod describe command:

```
$ kubectl describe
pod/netbackup-operator-controller-manager-6c9dc8d87f-pq8mr -n
netbackup-operator-system
```

The output is something like:

| Type    | Reason           | Age                 | Message                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------|------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ----    | -----            | ----                | -----                                                                                                                                                              |
| Warning | FailedScheduling | 56s (x3 over 2m24s) | 0/4 nodes are available:1 node(s) had taint {node-role.kubernetes.io/master: }, that the pod didn't tolerate, 3 node(s) didn't match Pod's node affinity/selector. |

To resolve this issue verify the nodeSelector settings in the operator/patch/operator\_patch.yaml file.

## Ensure that the container is running the patched image

There are three copies of the container image present in the Kubernetes environment during deployment or patching.

The first image copy is created on a local docker instance during image load operation. To check this copy, perform the following:

### 1 Run:

```
$ docker load -i images/pdk8soptr-18.0.tar.gz
```

Sample output:

```
Loaded image: msdp-operator:18.0
```

### 2 Taking the image name from step 1, run:

```
$ docker image ls | grep msdp-operator
```

Sample output:

```
msdp-operator 18.0 353d2bd50105 2 days ago 480 MB
```

### 3 Taking the value from step 2, run:

```
$ docker inspect 353d2bd50105 | jq .[].Id
```

```
"sha256:353d2bd50105cbc3c61540e10cf32a152432d5173bb6318b8e"
```

The second copy is created in the following respective registry's:

- *(AKS-specific)*: Azure Container Registry (ACR)
- *(EKS-specific)*: Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)

To check this copy, perform the following:

**1** Keep the image name and version same as original, run:

**(AKS-specific):** \$ docker image tag msdp-operator:18.0  
 testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator:18.0

**(EKS-specific):** \$ docker image tag msdp-operator:18.0  
 046777922665.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/nbuxeksdeploy.aws.io/msdp-operator:18.0

**2** Run:

\$ docker image ls | grep msdp-operator

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

```
msdp-operator 18.0 353d2bd50105 2 days ago 480 MB
registry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator 18.0 353d2bd50105 2 days ago
480 MB
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
msdp-operator 18.0 353d2bd50105 2 days ago 480 MB
msdp-operator 18.0 046777922665.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.
amazonaws.com/nbuxeksdeploy.aws.io/msdp-operator
18.0 353d2bd50105 2 days ago 480 MB /msdp-operator 18.0
353d2bd50105 2 days ago 480 MB
```

**3** To push the image to the registry, run:

**(AKS-specific):** \$ docker push testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator

**(EKS-specific):** \$ docker push testregistry.<account  
 id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/<registry>:<tag>.io/msdp-operator

The push refers to a repository [*testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator*]

- **(AKS-specific):** [*testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator*]

- **(EKS-specific):**

[*046777922665.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/nbuxeksdeploy.aws.io/msdp-operator*]

0a504041c925: Layer already exists

18.0: digest:

sha256:d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3 size:  
 2622

- 4 To verify local image digest after the push operation, run:

```
$ docker inspect 353d2bd50105 | jq .[].RepoDigests
```

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

```
[
  "testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator@sha256:
d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3"
]
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
[
  "testregistry.<account
id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/<registry>:<tag>.io/
msdp-operator@sha256: d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3"
]
```

**5** To verify image presence in the registry, run:

**(AKS-specific):** `$ az acr repository list --name testregistry`

**(EKS-specific):** `$ aws ecr describe-repositories --repository-names "veritas/main_test1"`

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

```
[
  "msdp-operator",
]
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
"repositories": [
  {
    "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-east-2:046777922665:
repository/veritas/main_test1",
    "registryId": "046777922665",
    "repositoryName": "veritas/main_test1",
    "repositoryUri": "046777922665.dkr.ecr.us-east-2.
amazonaws.com/veritas/main_test1",
    "createdAt": "2022-04-13T07:27:52+00:00",
    "imageTagMutability": "MUTABLE",
    "imageScanningConfiguration": {
      "scanOnPush": false
    },
    "encryptionConfiguration": {
      "encryptionType": "AES256"
    }
  }
]
```

**6** To verify image digest in registry, run:

**(AKS-specific):** \$ az acr repository show -n testregistry --image msdp-operator:18.0

**(EKS-specific):** \$ aws ecr describe-images --registry-id 046777922665 --repository-name "veritas/main\_test1" --image-ids imageTag=latestTest5

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

```
{
  "changeableAttributes": {
    "deleteEnabled": true,
    "listEnabled": true,
    "readEnabled": true,
    "writeEnabled": true
  },
  "createdTime": "2022-02-01T13:43:26.6809388Z",
  "digest": "sha256:d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3",
  "lastUpdateTime": "2022-02-01T13:43:26.6809388Z",
  "name": "18.0",
  "signed": false
}
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
"imageDetails": [
  {
    "registryId": "046777922665",
    "repositoryName": "veritas/main_test1",
    "imageDigest":
"sha256:d0095074286a50c6bca3daeddbaf264cf4006a92fa3a074daa4739cc995b36f8",
    "imageTags": [
      "latestTest5"
    ],
    "imageSizeInBytes": 38995046,
    "imagePushedAt": "2022-04-13T15:56:07+00:00",
    "imageManifestMediaType": "application/vnd.docker.
distribution.manifest.v2+json",
    "artifactMediaType": "application/vnd.docker.container.image.v1+json"
  }
]
```

The third copy is located on a Kubernetes node running the container after it is pulled from the registry. To check this copy, perform the following:

**1 Run;**

```
$ kubectl get nodes -o wide
```

**(AKS-specific):**

| NAME                       | STATUS | VERSION | INTERNAL-IP | OS-IMAGE           |
|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|--------------------|
| aks-agentpool-7601-vmss000 | Ready  | v1.21.7 | 10.240.0.4  | Ubuntu 18.04.6 LTS |

**(EKS-specific):**

| NAME                       | STATUS | VERSION | INTERNAL-IP | OS-IMAGE           |
|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|--------------------|
| eks-agentpool-7601-vmss000 | Ready  | v1.21.7 | 10.240.0.4  | Ubuntu 18.04.6 LTS |

**2 Use kubectl debug to run a container on the node:**

**(AKS-specific):** \$ kubectl debug node/aks-nodepool1-7601-vmss000-it  
 --image=mcr.microsoft.com/aks/fundamental/base-ubuntu:v0.0.11  
 root@aks-agentpool-7601-vmss000:/#

**(EKS-specific):** \$ kubectl debug node/eks-nodepool1-7601-vmss000-it  
 --image=mcr.microsoft.com/eks/fundamental/base-ubuntu:v0.0.11  
 root@eks-agentpool-7601-vmss000:/#

**3 You can interact with the node session from the privileged container:**

```
chroot /host
```

**4 Verify the presence of the image:**

```
/usr/local/bin/crictl image | grep msdp
```

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

```
testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator 18.0 353d2bd50105c 182MB
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
<account id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/msdp-operator 18.0  
353d2bd50105c 182MB
```



**5** Verify the image ID on the Kubernetes node, run:

```
/usr/local/bin/crictl inspecti 353d2bd50105c | jq .[].id
```

Sample output

```
"sha256:353d2bd50105cbc3c61540e10cf32a152432d5173bb6318b8e"
null
```

**6** Verify the image digest on the Kubernetes node, run:

```
/usr/local/bin/crictl inspecti 353d2bd50105c | jq .[].repoDigests
```

Sample output

**(AKS-specific):**

```
[
  "testregistry.azurecr.io/msdp-operator@sha256:
d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3"
]
null
```

**(EKS-specific):**

```
[
  "<account
id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/msdp-operator@sha256:
d294f260813599562eb5ace9e0acd91d61b7dbc53c3"
]
null
```

## How to make sure that you are running the correct image

Use the steps given above to identify image ID and Digest and compare with values obtained from the registry and the Kubernetes node running the container.

---

**Note:** MSDP Scaleout images (uss-engine, uss-mds, uss-controller, msdp-operator) use `IfNotPresent` imagePullPolicy. A unique image tag is required in order for a Kubernetes node to pull an updated image.

---

## Getting EEB information from an image, a running container, or persistent data

To view the list of installed EEBs, run the `nbbuilder` script provided in the EEB file archive.

**(AKS-specific):** \$ bash nbbuilder.sh -registry\_name  
testregistry.azurecr.io -list\_installed\_eebs -nb\_src\_tag=10.3  
-msdp\_src\_tag=18.0

**(EKS-specific):** \$ bash nbbuilder.sh -registry\_name <account  
id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com -list\_installed\_eebs  
-nb\_src\_tag=10.3 -msdp\_src\_tag=18.0

Sample output:

**(AKS-specific):**

**(EKS-specific):**

```
Wed Feb 2 20:48:13 UTC 2022: Listing strings for EEBs
installed in <account id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/netbackup/main:10.3.
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992004_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992021_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992022_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992023_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3992020_SET3992019_EEB2
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992009_EEB2
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992016_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992017_EEB1
Wed Feb 2 20:48:13 UTC 2022: End
Wed Feb 2 20:48:13 UTC 2022: Listing strings for EEBs
installed in <account id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/uss-controller:18.0.
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992007_EEB1
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3992020_SET3992019_EEB2
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992010_EEB2
Wed Feb 2 20:48:14 UTC 2022: End
Wed Feb 2 20:48:14 UTC 2022: Listing strings for EEBs
installed in <account id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/uss-engine:18.0.
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992006_EEB1
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992023_EEB1
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3992020_SET3992019_EEB2
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992009_EEB2
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992010_EEB2
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992018_EEB1
Wed Feb 2 20:48:14 UTC 2022: End
Wed Feb 2 20:48:14 UTC 2022: Listing strings for EEBs
installed in <account id>.dkr.ecr.<region>.amazonaws.com/uss-mds:18.0.
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992008_EEB1
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3992020_SET3992019_EEB2
```

```
EEB_MSDP_18.0_PET3980928_SET3992010_EEB2
Wed Feb 2 20:48:15 UTC 2022: End
```

Alternatively, if the `nbbuilder` script is not available, you can view the installed EEBs by executing the following command:

```
$ docker run --rm <image_name>:<image_tag> cat
/usr/openv/pack/pack.summary
```

Sample output:

```
EEB_NetBackup_10.1Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992004_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992021_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992022_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992023_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3992020_SET3992019_EEB2
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992009_EEB2
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992016_EEB1
EEB_NetBackup_10.3Beta6_PET3980928_SET3992017_EEB1
```

To view all EEBs installed in a running container, run:

```
$ kubectl exec --stdin --tty <primary-pod-name> -n <namespace> --
cat /usr/openv/pack/pack.summary
```

---

**Note:** The pack directory may be located in different locations in the `uss-*` containers. For example: `/uss-controller/pack` , `/uss-mds/pack`, `/uss-proxy/pack`.

---

To view a list of installed data EEBs from a running container, run:

```
$ kubectl exec --stdin --tty <primary-pod-name> -n <namespace> --
cat /mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/pack/pack.summary
```

## Resolving the certificate error issue in NetBackup operator pod logs

Following error is displayed in NetBackup operator pod logs when the primary server certificate is changed:

```
ERROR controller-runtime.manager.controller.environment
Error defining desired resource {"reconciler group": "netbackup.veritas.com",
"reconciler kind": "Environment", "name": "test-delete", "namespace": "netbackup-environment",
"Type": "MSDPScaleout", "Resource": "dedupel", "error": "Unable to get primary host UUID:
Get \"https://nbux-10-244-33-24.vxindia.veritas.com:1556/netbackup/config/hosts\":
x509: certificate signed by unknown authority (possibly because of \"crypto/rsa:
verification error\" while trying to verify candidate authority certificate \"nbatd\")\"}
```

To resolve this issue, restart the NetBackup operator by deleting the NetBackup operator pod using the following command:

```
kubect1 delete <Netbackup-operator-pod-name> -n <namespace>
```

## Pod restart failure due to liveness probe time-out

As part of liveness probe for primary and media pods, a health script runs inside the container to check the NetBackup health status.

When there is an issue with a container related to a full disk, CPU, or memory pressure, the liveness probe gets timed out because of no response from the health script. As a result, the Pod does not restart.

To resolve this issue, restart the Pod manually. Delete the Pod using the `kubect1 delete pod/<podname> -n <namespace>` command.

The Pod is deleted and Kubernetes creates another Pod.

## NetBackup messaging queue broker take more time to start

This issue is due to **nbmqbroker** service taking more time to start.

**To resolve this issue, perform the following steps**

- 1 Exec into the respective Primary Server pod using the following command:

```
kubect1 exec -it <pod-name> -n <namespace> -- /bin/bash
```

- 2 Check the nbmqbroker service logs which are in `/usr/opensv/mqbroker/logs/` folder.

If the value of **checking service start status count**: is more than the 75 then **nbmqbroker** would take more time to start.

- 3 Stop the nbmqbroker service using the following command:

```
/usr/opensv/mqbroker/bin/nbmqbroke stop
```

- 4 Open the `/usr/opensv/mqbroker/bin/nbmqbroke` file.

- 5 Increase the value of **total\_time** and **sleep\_duration** and save the file.

- 6 Start the mqbroker service using the following command:

```
/usr/opensv/mqbroker/bin/nbmqbroke start
```

If the Primary Server pod gets restarted then the user must perform the same above steps to increase the values of **total\_time** and **sleep\_duration**, as these values will not get persisted after pod restart.

## Host mapping conflict in NetBackup

The following error message is displayed due to host mapping conflict in NetBackup:

```
..exited with status 7659: Connection cannot be established because
the host validation failed on the target host
```

In kubernetes deployment, communication to pod goes through multiple layers that is, load balancer, nodes and pod. In certain setups during communication host may get associated with certain IP and would be changed. That IP may get associated with some different pod and which causes conflict. The host mapping entries is in the form of "::ffff:<ip address>"

### To resolve the issue of host mapping conflict in NetBackup

- 1 To resolve the conflict issue, refer to [Mappings for Approval tab](#) section of the *NetBackup Security and Encryption Guide*.
- 2 To remove the entries that are not valid, refer to [Removing host ID to host name mappings](#) section of the *NetBackup Security and Encryption Guide*.

## Issue with capacity licensing reporting which takes longer time

The `nbdeployutil` utility does not perform well on EFS or Azure files based volumes. Specify different block storage based volume to get good performance.

### To resolve the issue, perform the following:

- 1 For running report manually, pass `--parentdir /mnt/nbdb/<FOLDER_NAME>` to `nbdeployutil` command.
- 2 For changing `parentdir` to scheduled capacity reporting, provide a custom value in `nbdeployutilconfig.txt` file.
- 3 Create/Edit the `nbdeployutilconfig.txt` file located at `/usr/opensv/var/global/` by adding the following entry:

```
[NBDEPLOYUTIL_INCREMENTAL]
PARENTDIR=/mnt/nbdb/<FOLDER_NAME>
```

## Local connection is getting treated as insecure connection

The following error message is displayed when un-necessary audit events are get logged only when reverse dns lookup is enabled for primary and media Load Balancer service:

Host 'eaebbef2-57bc-483b-8146-1f6616622276' is trying to connect to host '<serverName>.abc.com'. The connection is dropped, because the host '<serverName>.abc.com' now appears to be NetBackup 8.0 or earlier

Primary and media servers are referred with multiple IP's inside the pod (pod IP/LoadBalancer IP). With reverse name lookup of IP enabled, NetBackup treats the local connection as remote insecure connection.

To resolve the audit events issue, disable the reverse name lookup of primary and media Load Balancer IP.

## Primary pod is in pending state for a long duration

Primary pod and Operator pod have pod anti-affinity set.

### To resolve the issue of long duration pending state of primary pod

- 1 Verify if Operator pod and Primary pod are scheduled to same node using the following commands:

```
kubectl get all -n <primary pod namespace> -o wide
```

```
kubectl get all -n <operator pod namespace> -o wide
```

- 2 If it is allocated to same node then create new node with same node selector given in CR for primary server.
- 3 Delete the Primary pod which is in pending state.

The newly created Primary pod must not be in pending state now.

## Backing up data from Primary server's /mnt/nbdata/ directory fails with primary server as a client

Backing up data from Primary server's /mnt/nbdata/ directory fails with primary server as a client.

From NetBackup version 10.1 onwards, the /mnt/nbdata directory would be on the following respective files:

- (AKS-specific): Azure file share
- (EKS-specific): EFS

The /mnt/nbdata directory of primary server is mounted using the NFS protocol.

Hence for backing up the data from /mnt/nbdata directory, change the policy attribute for such policies.

To resolve this issue, enable the **Follow NFS** check box in policy attribute.

## Storage server not supporting Instant Access capability on Web UI after upgrading NetBackup

After you upgrade NetBackup 10.0 (10.0.0.1 or 10.1), 10.1.1, 10.2 to NetBackup 10.3 or MSDP Scaleout to 18.0, if you:

- find the storage server not supporting Instant Access capability on Web UI  
Or
- fail to select MSSQL recovery point to create MSSQL Instant Access on Web UI

Then perform the following steps manually to refresh the Instant Access capability in NetBackup:

1. Login to NetBackup primary server.
2. Execute the following commands to refresh the MSDP capabilities on NetBackup primary server:

```
nbdevconfig -getconfig
```

```
nbdevconfig -setconfig
```

For example,

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbdevconfig -getconfig -stype  
PureDisk -storage_server [storage server] >
```

```
/tmp/tmp_pd_config_file
```

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/admincmd/nbdevconfig -setconfig  
-storage_server [storage server] -stype PureDisk -configlist  
/tmp/tmp_pd_config_file
```

3. Restart the NetBackup Web Management Console service (nbwmc) on NetBackup primary server.

For example,

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/nbwmc terminate
```

```
/usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/nbwmc start
```

## Taint, Toleration, and Node affinity related issues in cpServer

### The cpServer control pool pod is in pending state

If one of the following cpServer control pool pod is in pending state, then perform the steps that follow:

```
flexsnap-agent, flexsnap-api-gateway, flexsnap-certauth,
flexsnap-coordinator, flexsnap-idm, flexsnap-nginx,
flexsnap-notification, flexsnap-scheduler, flexsnap-, flexsnap-,
flexsnap-fluentd-, flexsnap-fluentd
```

1. Obtain the pending pod's toleration and affinity status using the following command:

```
kubectl get pods <pod name>
```

2. Check if the node-affinity and tolerations of pod are matching with:
  - fields listed in **cpServer.nodepool.controlpool** or **primary.nodeselector** in the `environment.yaml` file.
  - taint and label of node pool, mentioned in **cpServer.nodeselector.controlpool** or **primary.nodeselector** in the `environment.yaml` file.

If all the above fields are correct and matching and still the control pool pod is in pending state, then the issue may be due to all the nodes in nodepool running at maximum capacity and cannot accommodate new pods. In such case the nodepool must be scaled properly.

## The cpServer data pool pod is in pending state

If one of the following cpServer data pool pod is in pending state, then perform the steps that follow:

```
flexsnap-listener, flexsnap-workflow, flexsnap-datamover
```

1. Obtain the pending pod's toleration and affinity status using the following command:

```
kubectl get pods <pod name>
```

2. Check if the node-affinity and tolerations of pod are matching with:
  - fields listed in **cpServer.nodepool.datapool** in the `environment.yaml` file.
  - taint and label of node pool, mentioned in **cpServer.nodeselector.datapool** in the `environment.yaml` file.

If all the above fields are correct and matching and still the control pool pod is in pending state, then the issue may be due to all the nodes in nodepool running at maximum capacity and cannot accommodate new pods. In such case the nodepool must be scaled properly.



## The Snapshot Manager operator (flexsnap-operator) pod is in pending state

1. Obtain the pending pod's toleration and affinity status using the following command:

```
kubect1 get pods <pod name>
```

2. Check if the node-affinity and tolerations of pod are matching with:

- fields listed in **operator/kustomization.yaml** file.
- taint and label of node pool, mentioned in above values.

If all the above fields are correct and matching and still the control pool pod is in pending state, then the issue may be due to all the nodes in nodepool running at maximum capacity and cannot accommodate new pods. In such case the nodepool must be scaled properly.

## Nodes configured with incorrect taint and label

If the nodes are configured with incorrect taint and label values, the user can edit them using the following command provided for AKS as an example:

```
az aks nodepool update \ --resource-group <resource_group> \
--cluster-name <cluster_name> \ --name <nodepool_name> \ --node-taints
<key>=<value>:<effect> \ --no-wait

az aks nodepool update \ --resource-group <resource_group> \
--cluster-name <cluster_name> \ --name <cluster_name> \ --labels
<key>=<value>
```

## Operations performed on cpServer in environment.yaml file are not reflected

Operations such as add/remove/comment/uncomment performed on cpServer in environment.yaml file are not reflected even after applying them. The reasons and solutions for the same are as follow:

- Check if the action is reflected in cpServer CRO by using the following command:

```
kubect1 describe cpserver n $ENVIRONMENT_NAMESPACE
```

If changes are not reflected then , check environment operator logs and if changes are reflected then follow the next steps.

- Check if the flexsnap operator is running by using the following command:

```
kubect1 get pods -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE | grep flexsnap-operator
| awk '{printf $1" " }
```

- The flexsnap operator is running and is already processing the event (Update, Upgrade, Create, Delete).
  - To check logs of running operator, use the following command:
 

```
kubectl logs -f $(kubectl get pods -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE |
grep flexsnap-operator | awk '{printf $1" " }')
```
  - If you still want to go ahead with new action, you can stop the processing of the current event so that the new events are processed. To do so delete the flexsnap operator pod using the following command:
 

```
kubectl delete pod $(kubectl get pods -n $OPERATOR_NAMESPACE |
grep flexsnap-operator | awk '{printf $1" " }')
```

This will re-create the flexsnap-operator pod which will be ready to serve new events.

---

**Note:** The newly created pod might have missed the event which was performed before re-creation of pod. In this case you may have to reapply `environment.yaml`.

---

## Elastic media server related issues

This section provides the issues and their respective workaround for the issues observed in elastic media server feature.

- **Issue with autoscaler for scaling in the media server pods**

This issue is observed when there is no load or only few jobs are running even when there are maximum number of media server pods/nodes that are in running state.

  - Verify if media server autoscaler is trying to scale-in but unable to shutdown the media server pods which are marked to be scaled-in.
  - Verify if there are any jobs or bpps processes running on the media pods with the higher indexed running pod by referring to the NetBackup operator logs as mentioned below:

```
2023-03-01T08:14:56.470Z          INFO
controller-runtime.manager.controller.mediaserver      Running
jobs 0:  on Media Server nbux-10-244-33-77.vxindia.veritas.com.
{"reconciler group": "netbackup.veritas.com",
"reconciler kind": "MediaServer", "name": "media1", "namespace":
"netbackup-environment", "Media Server":
"nbux-10-244-33-77.vxindia.veritas.com"}
2023-03-01T08:14:56.646Z          INFO
```

```
controller-runtime.manager.controller.mediaserver      bpps
processes running status. false: on Media Server
nbux-10-244-33-77.vxindia.veritas.com. {"reconciler group":
"netbackup.veritas.com", "reconciler kind": "MediaServer",
"name": "media1", "namespace": "netbackup-environment", "Media
Server": "nbux-10-244-33-77.vxindia.veritas.com"}
```

Perform the following to know which bpps processes are running and are not allowing to scale-in the media server pod:

- Login to NetBackup Web UI portal.
- Check the notifications tab for any notifications of **Media server elasticity event** category. The notification has the list of additional process running on specific media server. User must wait until the process listed in the additional process running exits.  
 Alternatively, user can also see the list of processes in the NetBackup operator logs as follows:

```
2023-07-11T13:33:44.142Z INFO
controller-runtime.manager.controller.mediaserver
Following processes are still running : bpbkar test1, bpbkar
test2 {"reconciler group": "netbackup.veritas.com",
"reconciler kind": "MediaServer", "name": "test-media-server",
"namespace": "netbackup-environment"}
```

#### ■ **Media server pod not in ready state due to certificate issues**

If the **maximumReplica** count is reduced and the reduced media servers are not decommissioned and in case the replicas are again increased you may observe that the media server pods will not be in ready state due to certificate related errors. For example: certificate expired.

Reduce the replicas and decommission the reduced replicas and then proceed with increasing replica count.

To reduce the maximum number of replicas, perform the media server decommissioning steps mentioned in [References to nonexistent or decommissioned media servers remain in NetBackup](#).

#### **Additional steps**

- Delete the Load Balancer service created for the media server by running the following commands:
 

```
$ kubectl get service --namespace <namespce_name>
$ kubectl delete service <service-name> --namespace
<namespce_name>
```

- Identify and delete any outstanding persistent volume claims for the media server by running the following commands:
 

```
$ kubectl get pvc --namespace <namespcce_name>
$ kubectl delete pvc <pvc-name>
```
- Locate and delete any persistent volumes created for the media server by running the following commands:
 

```
$ kubectl get pv
$ kubectl delete pv <pv-name> --grace-period=0 --force
```
- **Duplication job is not getting completed**

Duplication job is not getting completed (in turn scale-down is not happening) because **MachineAdministrativePause** is set on the media server as part of scale down while duplication is still running.

While configuring destination storage unit, manually select media servers which are always up, running and would not be able to scale-in anytime. Number of media server which are always running would be same as that mentioned against **minimumReplicas** field in CR. Above recommendation also applies when upgrading from older version to NetBackup version 10.3. Post-upgrade manually select media servers that are mentioned against **minimumReplicas** field in CR during upgrade. Default **minimumReplicas** is 1.
- **Error while connecting to media server**

For scaled in media servers, certain resources and configurations are retained to avoid reconfiguration during subsequent scale out. Post entries for scaled in media servers are not removed from NetBackup primary server and hence if those media servers are used for any operation, connectivity issue is observed.

**Workaround:**

It is recommended to use media servers that are always up, running and would never scale in (by the media server autoscaler). Number of media servers that are always up and running would be same as that of the value mentioned in **minimumReplicas** field in CR.

## Failed to register Snapshot Manager with NetBackup

NetBackup cloud scale installation failed due to Snapshot Manager registration failure with NetBackup.

The environment CustomResourceDefinitions (CRD) marks the NetBackup installation as failed due to the failure status of cpServer:

- Case 1: The status of cpServer CRD is displayed as failed with the following event:

Failure OperationFailed 46m flexsnap-operator [Snapshot Manager registration with NetBackup] failed = Failed to register Snapshot Manager with NetBackup

Or

- The flexsnap-operator encountered the following log:

```
Mar 17 00:56:39 aks-cpcontrol-15585928-vmss000000
flexsnap-operator[9] MainThread flexsnap.util: ERROR - Failed to
register Snapshot Manager to NetBackup!
{'errorCode': 9875, 'errorMessage': 'Failed to add preconfigured
plugins from Snapshot Manager.', 'attributeErrors': {},
'fileUploadErrors': [], 'errorDetails':
[]}. Response status code: 500
```

```
Mar 17 00:57:00 aks-cpcontrol-15585928-vmss000000
flexsnap-operator[9] MainThread flexsnap.util: ERROR - Failed to
register Snapshot Manager to NetBackup!
{'errorCode': 9858, 'errorMessage': 'Failed to add NetBackup with
Snapshot Manager.', 'attributeErrors': {}, 'fileUploadErrors':
[], 'errorDetails': []}.
Response status code: 500
```

```
Mar 17 01:00:14 aks-cpcontrol-15585928-vmss000000
flexsnap-operator[9] MainThread flexsnap.util: ERROR - Failed to
register Snapshot Manager to NetBackup!
{'errorCode': 9896, 'errorMessage': 'Failed to add NetBackup with
Snapshot Manager due to the failure in certificate generation.',
'attributeErrors': {},
'fileUploadErrors': [], 'errorDetails': []}. Response status code:
500
```

### Workaround:

Manually register Snapshot Manager with NetBackup by performing the following steps:

- Navigate to **NetBackup UI > Workload > Cloud > Snapshot Manager** and click on **Add**.
- Enter the values for FQDN of Snapshot Manager and the port (Default: 443).
- Click **Save**.

---

**Note:** Even after Snapshot Manager is registered with NetBackup manually the status of cpServer CRD would be displayed as failed. This status does not affect the working of Snapshot Manager.

---

## Pods unable to connect to flexsnap-rabbitmq post Kubernetes cluster restart

Pods such as `flexsnap-coordinator`, `flexsnap-agent` and so on were unable to connect to `flexsnap-rabbitmq` after Kubernetes cluster restart.

This issue can be resolved by restarting the NetBackup Snapshot Manager services except `flexsnap-certauth` using the following command:

```
kubectrl delete <pod-name> -n <namespace>
```

## Troubleshooting AKS-specific issues

This section lists the additional troubleshooting issues and their respective workaround that are specific to Azure Kubernetes Services cluster in the Azure Cloud.

### Data migration unsuccessful even after changing the storage class through the storage yaml file

#### To resolve the data migration unsuccessful issue

- 1** Check if the previous/older migration PVC is still present.
- 2** Check if an existing migration job is in pending/running state.
- 3** Migration will not be triggered if storage class name is not changed for volumes (catalog) of primary server.
- 4** Check if the updated storage yaml file is set to use any other storage class other than `Azure premium files` for catalog.
- 5** Check if the protocol version for catalog storage class is set to **NFS** to allow successful migration.

- 6 Check if the status of migration reported by the migration pod in the logs is other than *MigrationStatus: Passed*.
- 7 Ensure that the User's Azure subscription has **Classic Network Contributor** role which is also a pre-requisite for migration/upgrade.

---

**Note:** If reconciler is called while migration PVC exists the invocation will be failed, customers must wait for the completion of a migration job if an existing migration job is running and they can also monitor the migration job pods to check if there are any issues with the migration job. In order to resolve any problems encountered during existing migration job pod they may choose to delete the migration job pod manually. If the migration job pod does not exist, then customer may delete the migration PVC.

---

## Host validation failed on the target host

The following error message is displayed when host mapping conflicts with NetBackup:

```
Error in log: ..exited with status 7659: Connection cannot be
established because the host validation failed on the target host
```

In Kubernetes deployment, communication to pod happens through multiple layers that is, load balancer, nodes and pod. In certain setups during communication host may get associated with certain IP and that gets changed in course of time. That IP may get associated with some different pod and can cause conflict. The host mapping entries is in the form of `:ffff:<ip address>`.

### To resolve this conflict issue

- 1 To verify the conflict entries, see **Mappings for Approval tab** section of *NetBackup™ Security and Encryption Guide*.
- 2 Remove the entries that are not valid.

For more information, see **Removing host ID to host name mappings** section of *NetBackup™ Security and Encryption Guide*

## Primary pod goes in non-ready state

When jobs are running and if failover or upgrade of NetBackup primary server is triggered then primary pod may go in non-ready state. To confirm the issue,

- Exec into primary pod by running the following command:  

```
kubectl exec -it <primary_pod_name> -n <namespace> -- bash
```

- Open the logs using the `cat /mnt/nblogs/setup-server.log` command and verify the last lines:

```
Softlink /mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db does not exist or broken.
Error: Issue detected while validating soft links, restarting the pod may fix this.
NetBackup health check disabled.
```

To resolve this issue, delete the corrupted database and correct symlink as follows:

1. Exec into primary pod by running the following command:

```
kubectl exec -it <primary_pod_name> -n <namespace> - bash
```

2. In primary pod run the following commands in order:

```
# /opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health disable
# bp.kill_all
# mv -f /mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db /mnt/nbdb/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db
# ln -sf /mnt/nbdb/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db /mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db
# chown -h nbsvcusr:nbsvcusr /mnt/nbdata/usr/openv/netbackup/db/rb.db
# bp.start_all
# /opt/veritas/vxapp-manage/nb-health enable
```

## Troubleshooting EKS-specific issues

This section lists the additional troubleshooting issues and their respective workaround that are specific to Amazon Elastic Kubernetes cluster in the Amazon Web Services Cloud.

### Resolving the primary server connection issue

NetBackup operator pod logs displays the following error:

```
Failed to connect the Primary server. "error":
"Get \"https://abc.xyz.com:*/netbackup/security/cacert\":
dial tcp: i/o timeout
```

The above error appears due to the following reasons:

- Operator, primary server and media server pod must have been started in different availability zones.
- Load balancer IP address and node on which primary server pod have started are in different availability zones.



- Load balancer created for NetBackup load balancer service is in failed state.
- FQDN to IP address given in networkLoadBalancer section in CR spec is not DNS resolvable.

**To resolve the primary server connection issue, perform the following**

- 1 Delete the primary server and media server CR instance using the following command:

```
kubect1 delete -f <environment.yaml>
```

---

**Caution:** Be cautious while performing this step.

---

- 2 Fix the issue and provide appropriate details in CR specs in `environment.yaml` file.
- 3 Redeploy the NetBackup by reapplying the `environment.yaml` file using the following command:

```
kubect1 apply -f environment.yaml
```

## NetBackup Snapshot Manager deployment on EKS fails

NetBackup Snapshot Manager deployment on EKS fails as cpServer fails to register Snapshot Manager to NetBackup.

This issue can be resolved by increasing the limit of inbound/outbound rules per Security Group. For more information, refer to the following link:

[How do I increase my security group rule quota in Amazon VPC?](#)

## Wrong EFS ID is provided in `environment.yaml` file

- Following error message is displayed when wrong EFS ID is provided in `environment.yaml` file:

```
"samples/environment.yaml": admission webhook
"environment2-validating-webhook.netbackup.veritas.com" denied the
request: Environment change rejected by validating webhook: EFS ID
provided for Catalog storage is not matching with EFS ID of already
created persistent volume for Primary servers Catalog volume. Old
EFS ID fs-0bf084568203f1c27 : New EFS ID fs-0bf084568203f1c29
```

Above error can appear due to the following reasons:

- During upgrade, if EFS ID provided is different from the EFS ID used in the previous version deployment.

- During fresh deployment, if user manually creates PV and PVC with EFS ID and provides different EFS ID in `environment.yaml` file.

**To resolve this issue, perform the following:**

- 1 Identify the correct EFS ID used for PV and PVC.
  - Previously used EFS ID can be retrieved from PV and PVC by using the following steps:
 

```
kubect1 get pvc -n <namespace>
```
  - From the output, copy the name of catalog PVC which is of the following format:
 

```
catalog-<resource name prefix>-primary-0
```
  - Describe catalog PVC using the following command:
 

```
kubect1 describe pvc <pvc name> -n <namespace>
```

 Note down the value of **Volume** field from the output.
  - Describe PV using the following command:
 

```
kubect1 describe pv <value of Volume obtained from above step>
```

 Note down the value of **VolumeHandle** field from the output. This is the EFS ID used previously.
- 2 Provide correct EFS ID in the `environment.yaml` file and apply the `environment.yaml` using the following command:
 

```
kubect1 apply -f environment.yaml
```

## Primary pod is in ContainerCreating state

Primary pod is in ContainerCreating state for a long period due to the following reasons:

- Wrong EFS ID
- Format of the EFS ID is incorrect

**To resolve this issue, perform the following:**

- 1 Describe primary pod using the following command:
 

```
kubect1 describe <name of primary server pod> -n <namespace>
```
- 2 Depending on the following appropriate scenario, fix the error from the output under the Event section:
  - If the event log has an error related to incorrect EFS ID or incorrect format, then update the `environment.yaml` file with the correct EFS ID and perform the below steps.

Or

- If the event log has an error other than the error related to incorrect EFS ID, then analyze and fix the error and perform the below steps.

- 3 After fixing the error, clean the environment using the following command:

```
kubectl delete -k operator/
```

- 4 Delete PV and PVC created for primary server only by using the following command:

```
kubectl delete envrionment <envrionmentCR-name> -n <namespace>
```

Describe the PVC for primary server which has the following format and obtain the corresponding PV name:

```
catalog-<resource name prefix of primary>-primary-0
data-<resource name prefix of primary>-primary-0
logs-<resource name prefix of primary>-primary-0
```

Delete PVC and PV names using the following commands: For PVC: `kubectl delete pvc <pvc name> -n <namespace>` For PV: `kubectl delete pv <pv name>`

- PVC: `kubectl delete pvc <pvc name> -n <namespace>`
- PV: `kubectl delete pv <pv name>`

- 5 Deploy NetBackup operator again and then apply the `environment.yaml` file.

## Webhook displays an error for PV not found

Following error message is displayed when the user creates PVC with **claimRef** and fails to create PV during deployment:

```
error when creating "samples/environment.yaml": admission webhook
"environment2-validating-webhook.netbackup.veritas.com" denied the
request: Environment change rejected by validating webhook: PVC exist
for Catalog Volume. PersistentVolume pv-catalog-nbuxsystest-primary-0
does not exist for primary server's Catalog volume : PersistentVolume
"pv-catalog-nbuxsystest-primary-0" not found.
```

This issue can be resolved by creating PV and apply `environment.yaml` file again.

# CR template

This appendix includes the following topics:

- [Secret](#)
- [MSDP Scaleout CR](#)

## Secret

The Secret is the Kubernetes security component that stores the MSDP credentials that are required by the CR YAML.

```
# The secret is used to store the MSDP credential, which is required
by the CR YAML as follows.
# This part should be created separately and not be part of CR Template.
# The secret should have a "username" and a "password" key-pairs with the
corresponding username and password values.
# Please follow MSDP guide for the rules of the credential.
#   https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en_US/article.100048511
#   The pattern is "^[\w!$+\\-,.:;=?@[\\]\`{}\\|~]{1,62}$"
# We can create the secret directly via kubectl command:
#   kubectl create secret generic sample-secret --namespace
sample-namespace \
#   --from-literal=username=<username> --from-literal=password=<password>
# Alternatively, we can create the secret with a YAML file in the
following format.
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: sample-secret
# The namespace needs to be present.
namespace: sample-namespace
```

```
stringData:
  # Please follow MSDP guide for the credential characters and length.
  #   https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en_US/article.100048511
  #   The pattern is "^[\w!$+\-.,:;=?@[\]\`{}|\~]{1,62}$"
  username: xxxx
  password: xxxxxx
```

## MSDP Scaleout CR

- The CR name must be fewer than 40 characters.
- The MSDP credentials stored in the Secret must match MSDP credential rules. See [Deduplication Engine credentials for NetBackup](#)
- MSDP CR cannot be deployed in the namespace of MSDP operator. It must be in a separate namespace.
- You cannot reorder the IP/FQDN list. You can update the list by appending the information.
- You cannot change the storage class name.  
The storage class must be backed with:
  - AKS: Azure disk CSI storage driver "disk.csi.azure.com"
  - EKS: Amazon EBS CSI driver "ebs.csi.aws.com"
- You cannot change the data volume list other than for storage expansion. It is append-only and storage expansion only. Up to 16 data volumes are supported.
- Like the data volumes, the catalog volume can be changed for storage expansion only.
- You cannot change or expand the size of the log volume by changing the MSDP CR.
- You cannot enable NBCA after the configuration.
- Once KMS and the OST registration parameters set, you cannot change them.
- You cannot change the core pattern.

See [“MSDP Scaleout CR template for EKS”](#) on page 293.

See [“MSDP Scaleout CR template for AKS”](#) on page 286.

## MSDP Scaleout CR template for AKS

```
# The MSDPScaleout CR YAML
apiVersion: msdp.veritas.com/v1
kind: MSDPScaleout
metadata:
  # The CR name should not be longer than 40 characters.
  name: sample-app
  # The namespace needs to be present for the CR to be created in.
  # It's not allowed to deploy the CR in the same namespace with MSDP
  operator.
  namespace: sample-namespace
spec:
  # Your ACR URL where the docker images can be pulled from by the
  AKS cluster on demand
  # The allowed length is in range 1-255
  # It's optional for BYO. The code does not check the presence or
  validation.
  # User needs to specify it correctly if it's needed.
  containerRegistry: sample.azurecr.io
  #
  # The MSDP version string. It's the tag of the MSDP docker images.
  # The allowed length is in range 1-64
  version: "sample-version-string"
  #
  # Size defines the number of Engine instances in MSDP Scaleout.
  # The allowed size is between 1-16
  size: 4
  #
  # The IP and FQDN pairs are used by the Engine Pods to expose the MSDP
  services.
  # The IP and FQDN in one pair should match each other correctly.
  # They must be pre-allocated.
  # The item number should match the number of Engine instances.
  # They're not allowed to be changed or re-ordered. New items can be
  appended for scaling out.
  # The first FQDN is used to configure the storage server in NetBackup,
  automatically if autoRegisterOST is enabled,
  # or manually by the user if not.
  serviceIPFQDNs:
    # The pattern is IPv4 or IPv6 format
    - ipAddr: "sample-ip1"
    # The pattern is FQDN format. `[a-z][a-z0-9-.]{1,251}[a-z0-9]`
```

```
fqdn: "sample-fqdn1"
- ipAddr: "sample-ip2"
  fqdn: "sample-fqdn2"
- ipAddr: "sample-ip3"
  fqdn: "sample-fqdn3"
- ipAddr: "sample-ip4"
  fqdn: "sample-fqdn4"
#
# # s3ServiceIPFQDN is the IP and FQDN pair to expose the S3 service from the MSDP
instance.
# # The IP and FQDN in one pair should match each other correctly.
# # It must be pre-allocated.
# # It is not allowed to be changed after deployment.
# s3ServiceIPFQDN:
#   # The pattern is IPv4 or IPv6 format
#   ipAddr: "sample-s3-ip"
#   # The pattern is FQDN format.
#   fqdn: "sample-s3-fqdn"
#
# Optional annotations to be added in the LoadBalancer services for the
Engine IPs.
# In case we run the Engines on private IPs, we need to add some
customized annotations to the LoadBalancer services.
# See https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/aks/internal-lb
# It's optional. It's not needed in most cases if we're
with public IPs.
# loadBalancerAnnotations:
#   service.beta.kubernetes.io/azure-load-balancer-internal: "true"
#
# SecretName is the name of the secret which stores the MSDP credential.
# AutoDelete, when true, will automatically delete the secret specified
by SecretName after the
# initial configuration. If unspecified, AutoDelete defaults to true.
# When true, SkipPrecheck will skip webhook validation of the MSDP
credential. It is only used in data re-use
# scenario (delete CR and re-apply with pre-existing data) as the
secret will not take effect in this scenario. It
# can't be used in other scenarios. If unspecified, SkipPrecheck
defaults to false.
credential:
# The secret should be pre-created in the same namespace which has
the MSDP credential stored.
# The secret should have a "username" and a "password" key-pairs
```

with the corresponding username and password values.

- # Please follow MSDP guide for the rules of the credential.
- # [https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en\\_US/article.100048511](https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en_US/article.100048511)
- # A secret can be created directly via kubectl command or with the equivalent YAML file:
- # kubectl create secret generic sample-secret --namespace sample-namespace \
- # --from-literal=username=<username> --from-literal=password=<password>
- secretName: sample-secret
- # Optional
- # Default is true
- autoDelete: true
- # Optional
- # Default is false.
- # Should be specified only in data re-use scenario (aka delete and re-apply CR with pre-existing data)
- skipPrecheck: false
- #

# s3Credential:

- # # MSDP S3 only support AKS platform. Use this option in conjunction with KMS option enabled.
- # # The secret should be pre-created in the same namespace that the MSDP cluster is deployed.
- # # The secret should have an "accessKey" and a "secretKey" key-pairs with the corresponding accessKey and secretKey values.
- # # A secret can be created directly via kubectl-msdp command:
- # # kubectl-msdp generate-s3-secret --namespace <namespace> --s3secret <s3SecretName>
- secretName: s3-secret
- # # Optional
- # # Default is true
- autoDelete: true



```
# # Optional

# # Default is false.

# # Should be specified only in data re-use scenario (aka delete and
re-apply CR with pre-existing data)

#   skipPrecheck: false

# Paused is used for maintenance only. In most cases you don't need
to specify it.
# When it's specified, MSDP operator stops reconciling the corresponding
MSDP-X (aka the CR).
# Optional.
# Default is false
# paused: false
#
# The storage classes for logVolume, catalogVolume and dataVolumes should
be:
#   - Backed with Azure disk CSI driver "disk.csi.azure.com" with the
managed disks, and allow volume
#     expansion.
#   - The Azure in-tree storage driver "kubernetes.io/azure-disk" is not
supported. You need to explicitly
#     enable the Azure disk CSI driver when configuring your AKS cluster,
or use k8s version v1.21.x which
#     has the Azure disk CSI driver built-in.
#   - In LRS category.
#   - At least Standard SSD for dev/test, and Premium SSD or Ultra Disk
for production.
#   - The same storage class can be used for all the volumes.
#   -
#
# LogVolume is the volume specification which is used to provision a
volume of an MDS or Controller
# Pod to store the log files and core dump files.
# It's not allowed to be changed.
# In most cases, 5-10 GiB capacity should be big enough for one MDS or
Controller Pod to use.
logVolume:
  storageClassName: sample-azure-disk-scl
  resources:
```

```
    requests:
      storage: 5Gi
#
# CatalogVolume is the volume specification which is used to provision a
volume of an MDS or Engine
# Pod to store the catalog and metadata. It's not allowed to be changed
unless for capacity expansion.
# Expanding the existing catalog volumes expects short downtime of the
Engines.
# Please note the MDS Pods don't respect the storage request in
CatalogVolume, instead they provision the
# volumes with the minimal capacity request of 500MiB.
catalogVolume:
  storageClassName: sample-azure-disk-sc2
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 600Gi
#
# DataVolumes is a list of volume specifications which are used to
provision the volumes of
# an Engine Pod to store the MSDP data.
# The items are not allowed to be changed or re-ordered unless for
capacity expansion.
# New items can be appended for adding more data volumes to each
Engine Pod.
# Appending new data volumes or expanding the existing data volumes
expects short downtime of the Engines.
# The allowed item number is in range 1-16. To allow the other MSDP-X
Pods (e.g. Controller, MDS) running
# on the same node, the item number should be no more than "<the maximum
allowed volumes on the node> - 5".
# The additional 5 data disks are for the potential one MDS Pod, one
Controller Pod or one MSDP operator Pod
# to run on the same node with one MSDP Engine.
dataVolumes:
- storageClassName: sample-azure-disk-sc3
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 8Ti
- storageClassName: sample-azure-disk-sc3
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 8Ti
```

```
#
# NodeSelector is used to schedule the MSDPScaleout Pods on the specified
nodes.
# Optional.
# Default is empty (aka all available nodes)
nodeSelector:
  # e.g.
  # agentpool: nodepool2
  sample-node-label1: sampel-label-value1
  sample-node-label2: sampel-label-value2
#
# NBCA is the specification for MSDP-X to enable NBCA SecComm
for the Engines.
# Optional.
nbca:
  # The master server name
  # The allowed length is in range 1-255
  masterServer: sample-master-server-name
  # The CA SHA256 fingerprint
  # The allowed length is 95
  cafp: sample-ca-fp
  # The NBCA authentication/reissue token
  # The allowed length is 16
  # For security consideration, a token with maximum 1 user allowed and
valid for 1 day should be sufficient.
  token: sample-auth-token

  # # S3TokenSecret is the secret name that holds NBCA authentication/reissue token
for MSDP S3 service.
  # # It is used to request NBCA certificate for S3 service.
  # # It must be set if MSDP S3 service is enabled.
  # # The allowed length is in range 1-255
  # # For security consideration, a token with maximum 1 user allowed and valid for
1 day should be sufficient.
  # s3TokenSecret: sample-auth-token-secret-for-s3
#
# KMS includes the parameters to enable KMS for the Engines.
# We support to enable KMS in init or post configuration.
# We don't support to change the parameters once they have been set.
# Optional.
kms:
  # As either the NetBackup KMS or external KMS (EKMS) is configured or
registered on NetBackup master server, then used by
```

```
# MSDP by calling the NetBackup API, kmsServer is the NetBackup master
server name.
kmsServer: sample-master-server-name
keyGroup: sample-key-group-name
#
# autoRegisterOST includes the parameter to enable or disable the
automatic registration of
# the storage server, the default disk pool and storage unit when MSDP-X
configuration finishes.
autoRegisterOST:
# If it is true, and NBQA is enabled, the operator would register the
storage server,
# disk pool and storage unit on the NetBackup primary server, when the
MSDP CR is deployed.
# The first Engine FQDN is the storage server name.
# The default disk pool is in format "default_dp_<firstEngineFQDN>".
# The default storage unit is in format "default_stu_<firstEngineFQDN>".
# The default maximum concurrent jobs for the STU is 240.
# In the CR status, field "ostAutoRegisterStatus.registered" with value
True, False or Unknown indicates the registration state.
# It's false by default.
# Note: Please don't enable it unless with NB_9.1.2_0126+.
enabled: true
#
# CorePattern is the core pattern of the nodes where the MSDPScaleout
Pods are running.
# It's path-based. A default core path "/core/core.%e.%p.%t" will be
used if not specified.
# In most cases, you don't need to specify it.
# It's not allowed to be changed.
# Optional.
# corePattern: /sample/core/pattern/path
#
# tcpKeepAliveTime sets the namespaced sysctl parameter
net.ipv4.tcp_keepalive_time in Engine Pods.
# It's in seconds.
# The minimal allowed value is 60 and the maximum allowed value is 1800.
# A default value 120 is used if not specified. Set it to 0 to disable
the option.
# It's not allowed to change unless in maintenance mode (Paused=true),
and the change will not apply until the Engine Pods get restarted
# For AKS deployment in P release, please leave it unspecified or specify
it with a value smaller than 240.
```

```
# tcpKeepAliveTime: 120
#
# TCPIIdleTimeout is used to change the default value for Azure Load
Balancer rules and Inbound NAT rules.
# It's in minutes.
# The minimal allowed value is 4 and the maximum allowed value is 30.
# A default value 30 minutes is used if not specified. Set it to 0 to
disable the option.
# It's not allowed to change unless in maintenance mode (Paused=true),
and the change will not apply
# until the Engine Pods and the LoadBalancer services get recreated.
# For AKS deployment in P release, please leave it unspecified or specify
it with a value larger than 4.
# tcpIdleTimeout: 30
```

## MSDP Scaleout CR template for EKS

```
# The MSDPScaleout CR YAML
# notes:
# The CR name should be <= 40 characters.
# The MSDP credential stored in the Secret should match MSDP credential
rules defined in https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en\_US/article.100048511
apiVersion: msdp.veritas.com/v1
kind: MSDPScaleout
metadata:
  # The CR name should not be longer than 40 characters.
  name: sample-app
  # The namespace needs to be present for the CR to be created in.
  # It is not allowed to deploy the CR in the same namespace with MSDP
operator.
  namespace: sample-namespace
spec:
  # Your Container Registry(ECR for AWS EKS) URL where
the docker images can be pulled from the k8s cluster on demand
  # The allowed length is in range 1-255
  # It is optional for BYO. The code does not check the presence or
validation.
  # User needs to specify it correctly if it is needed.
  containerRegistry: sample.url
  #
  # The MSDP version string. It is the tag of the MSDP docker images.
  # The allowed length is in range 1-64
```

```
version: "sample-version-string"
#
# Size defines the number of Engine instances in the MSDP-X cluster.
# The allowed size is between 1-16
size: 4
#
# The IP and FQDN pairs are used by the Engine Pods to expose the
MSDP services.
# The IP and FQDN in one pair should match each other correctly.
# They must be pre-allocated.
# The item number should match the number of Engine instances.
# They are not allowed to be changed or re-ordered. New items can be
appended for scaling out.
# The first FQDN is used to configure the storage server in NetBackup,
automatically if autoRegisterOST is enabled,
# or manually by the user if not.
serviceIPFQDNs:
  # The pattern is IPv4 or IPv6 format
  - ipAddr: "sample-ip1"
    # The pattern is FQDN format.
    fqdn: "sample-fqdn1"
  - ipAddr: "sample-ip2"
    fqdn: "sample-fqdn2"
  - ipAddr: "sample-ip3"
    fqdn: "sample-fqdn3"
  - ipAddr: "sample-ip4"
    fqdn: "sample-fqdn4"
#
# Optional annotations to be added in the LoadBalancer services for the
Engine IPs.
# In case we run the Engines on private IPs, we need to add some
customized annotations to the LoadBalancer services.
# loadBalancerAnnotations:
#   # If it's an EKS environment, specify the following annotation
to use the internal IPs.
#   # see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/amazon/aws/internal-lb
#   service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer: "true"
#   # If the internal IPs are in a different subnet as the EKS cluster,
the following annotation should be
#   # specified as well. The subnet specified must be in the same virtual
network as the EKS cluster.
#   service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-internal-subnet:
"apps-subnet"
```

```
#
# # If your cluster is EKS, the following annotation item is required.
# # The subnet specified must be in the same VPC as your EKS.
# service.beta.kubernetes.io/aws-load-balancer-subnets: "subnet-04c47
28ec4d0ecb90"
#
# SecretName is the name of the secret which stores the MSDP credential.
# AutoDelete, when true, will automatically delete the secret specified
by SecretName after the
# initial configuration. If unspecified, AutoDelete defaults to true.
# When true, SkipPrecheck will skip webhook validation of the MSDP
credential. It is only used in data re-use
# scenario (delete CR and re-apply with pre-existing data) as the secret
will not take effect in this scenario. It
# cannot be used in other scenarios. If unspecified, SkipPrecheck defaults
to false.
credential:
# The secret should be pre-created in the same namespace which has the
MSDP credential stored.
# The secret should have a "username" and a "password" key-pairs with
the corresponding username and password values.
# Please follow MSDP guide for the rules of the credential.
# https://www.veritas.com/content/support/en_US/article.100048511
# A secret can be created directly via kubectl command or with the
equivalent YAML file:
# kubectl create secret generic sample-secret --namespace sample-
namespace \
# --from-literal=username=<username> --from-literal=password=
<password>
secretName: sample-secret
# Optional
# Default is true
autoDelete: true
# Optional
# Default is false.
# Should be specified only in data re-use scenario (aka delete and
re-apply CR with pre-existing data)
skipPrecheck: false
#
# Paused is used for maintenance only. In most cases you do not need
to specify it.
#
# When it is specified, MSDP operator stops reconciling the corresponding
```

MSDP-X cluster (aka the CR).

```
# Optional.
# Default is false
# paused: false
#
# The storage classes for logVolume, catalogVolume and dataVolumes
should be:
#   - Backed with AWS disk CSI driver "disk.csi.aws.com" with the
managed disks, and allow volume
#   expansion.
#   - The AWS in-tree storage driver "kubernetes.io/aws-disk" is not
supported. You need to explicitly
#   enable the AWS disk CSI driver when configuring your EKS cluster,
or use k8s version v1.21.x which
#   has the AWS disk CSI driver built-in.
#   - In LRS category.
#   - At least Standard SSD for dev/test, and Premium SSD or Ultra Disk
for production.
#   - The same storage class can be used for all the volumes.
#
# LogVolume is the volume specification which is used to provision a
volume of an MDS or Controller
# Pod to store the log files and core dump files.
# It is not allowed to be changed.
# In most cases, 5-10 GiB capacity should be big enough for one MDS or
Controller Pod to use.
logVolume:
  storageClassName: sample-AWS-disk-sc1
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: xGi
#
# CatalogVolume is the volume specification which is used to provision a
volume of an MDS or Engine
# Pod to store the catalog and metadata. It is not allowed to be changed
unless for capacity expansion.
# Expanding the existing catalog volumes expects short downtime of the
Engines.
# Please note the MDS Pods do not respect the storage request in
CatalogVolume, instead they provision the
# volumes with the minimal capacity request of 500MiB.
catalogVolume:
  storageClassName: sample-AWS-disk-sc2
```



```
resources:
  requests:
    storage: xxxGi
#
# DataVolumes is a list of volume specifications which are used to
provision the volumes of
# an Engine Pod to store the MSDP data.
# The items are not allowed to be changed or re-ordered unless for
capacity expansion.
# New items can be appended for adding more data volumes to each
Engine Pod.
# Appending new data volumes or expanding the existing data volumes
expects short downtime of the Engines.
# The allowed item number is in range 1-16. To allow the other MSDP-X
Pods (e.g. Controller, MDS) running
# on the same node, the item number should be no more than "<the
maximum allowed volumes on the node> - 5".
# The additional 5 data disks are for the potential one MDS Pod, one
Controller Pod or one MSDP operator Pod
# to run on the same node with one MSDP Engine.
dataVolumes:
  - storageClassName: sample-aws-disk-sc3
    resources:
      requests:
        storage: xxTi
  - storageClassName: sample-aws-disk-sc3
    resources:
      requests:
        storage: xxTi
#
# NodeSelector is used to schedule the MSDPScaleout Pods on the
specified nodes.
# Optional.
# Default is empty (aka all available nodes)
nodeSelector:
  # e.g.
  # agentpool: nodegroup2
  sample-node-label1: sampel-label-value1
  sample-node-label2: sampel-label-value2
#
# NBCA is the specification for the MSDP-X cluster to enable NBCA
SecComm for the Engines.
# Optional.
```

```
nbca:
  # The master server name
  # The allowed length is in range 1-255
  masterServer: sample-master-server-name
  # The CA SHA256 fingerprint
  # The allowed length is 95
  cafp: sample-ca-fp
  # The NBCA authentication/reissue token
  # The allowed length is 16
  # For security consideration, a token with maximum 1 user allowed
and valid for 1 day should be sufficient.
  token: sample-auth-token
#
# KMS includes the parameters to enable KMS for the Engines.
# We support to enable KMS in init or post configuration.
# We do not support to change the parameters once they have been set.
# Optional.
kms:
  # As either the NetBackup KMS or external KMS (EKMS) is configured
or registered on NetBackup master server, then used by
  # MSDP by calling the NetBackup API, kmsServer is the NetBackup master
server name.
  kmsServer: sample-master-server-name
  keyGroup: sample-key-group-name
#
# autoRegisterOST includes the parameter to enable or disable the
automatic registration of
  # the storage server, the default disk pool and storage unit when
MSDP-X configuration finishes.
  # We do not support to change autoRegisterOST.
autoRegisterOST:
  # If it is true, and NBCA is enabled, the operator would register
the storage server,
  # disk pool and storage unit on the NetBackup primary server, when
the MSDP CR is deployed.
  # The first Engine FQDN is the storage server name.
  # The default disk pool is in format "default_dp_<firstEngineFQDN>".
  # The default storage unit is in format "default_stu_<firstEngineFQDN>".
  # The default maximum number of concurrent jobs for the STU is 240.
  # In the CR status, field "ostAutoRegisterStatus.registered" with
value True, False or Unknown indicates the registration state.
  # It is false by default.
  enabled: true
```

```
#
# CorePattern is the core pattern of the nodes where the MSDPScaleout
Pods are running.
# It is path-based. A default core path "/core/core.%e.%p.%t" will be
used if not specified.
# In most cases, you do not need to specify it.
# It is not allowed to be changed.
# Optional.
# corePattern: /sample/core/pattern/path
#
# tcpKeepAliveTime sets the namespaced sysctl parameter net.ipv4.tcp_
keepalive_time in Engine Pods.
# It is in seconds.
# The minimal allowed value is 60 and the maximum allowed value is 1800.
# A default value 120 is used if not specified. Set it to 0 to disable
the option.
# It is not allowed to change unless in maintenance mode (paused=true),
and the change will not apply until the Engine Pods get restarted.
# For EKS deployment in 10.1 release, please leave it unspecified or
specify it with a value smaller than 240.
# tcpKeepAliveTime: 120
#
# TCPIIdleTimeout is used to change the default value for AWS Load
Balancer rules and Inbound NAT rules.
# It is in minutes.
# The minimal allowed value is 4 and the maximum allowed value is 30.
# A default value 30 minutes is used if not specified. Set it to 0 to
disable the option.
# It is not allowed to change unless in maintenance mode (paused=true),
and the change will not apply until the Engine Pods and the LoadBalancer
services get recreated.
# For EKS deployment in 10.1 release, please leave it unspecified or
specify it with a value larger than 4.
# tcpIdleTimeout: 30
```